# A Study of the Principles of Technical Direction and Their Application to the Production of Sophocles' Play Oedipus Rex 

Sherill Sandra Price

Follow this and additional works at: https:// openprairie.sdstate.edu/etd

## Recommended Citation

Price, Sherill Sandra, "A Study of the Principles of Technical Direction and Their Application to the Production of Sophocles' Play Oedipus Rex" (1958). Electronic Theses and Dissertations. 2527.
https://openprairie.sdstate.edu/etd/2527

# A STUDY OR THk YHIECIPLEE OF THCHNICAL DLKECTION 

 AND THEIH NPPLICATION TO THE PRODUCTION OF SOPHOCLEE' PLAY QEDPIR BEXbJ<br>Shorill Sandra Price

A theele submitted
In partial fulfillment of the requiremente for the degreo Master of Scionoe in zanguage Stille at South Dakota \&iato Collego of Agrlculture and techantc Are

December, ‘1958
SIUTH DAKETA STATE CこLLEGE UBRARY

# A STUDY OF THE PRINCIPLES OF TECHRZCAL DIRECTION agd their aprlication to ter production OI SOHEOCLES' PLAY 

## QTRIPUS RR

This thesis is approved as a creditable, independent investigation by a candidate for the degree, Master of science, and acceptable as meeting the thesis requirements for this degree; but without implying that the conclusions reached by the candidate are necessarily the conclusions of the major department.

## ACXMOWLEDGEMEN TS

Thank you, Lawrenoe Stine, South Dakote stete College Director of Drens, under whose direotion both this thesie and muoh of as work in theatre heve been mede poselble.

Thent you, also, Dr. Oerl L. W1lson, for your priaser reoponelbility for any etrength of thought. olerity of orgenization end statenont, end/or inetruotionel merit in th10 thesis.

And thenk you, Clerenoe Denton, South Dekote State Oollege Teohnloal Direotor, fur jour oonstent kindnese, encouragenent, end help given ae in ay theetre work and aspirations.
S. 8. P.

To
MOTHET and PATHER
$\stackrel{2}{2}$

4

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

## PART I. IATRODUCTION

PART II. BODY
Chapter Pago
I. SELECTINO THE SCRIPT ..... 8
Inowledge of plaje ..... 11
Knowledge of an adequate ceason ..... 11
Enowledge of the audience ..... 19
Enowledge of the drama facilitioa ..... 20
II. UNDER 8TANDINO SHE SCRIPT ..... 33
Rellance on eelf alone ..... 35
Rollance on authority alone ..... 35
follance on both celf and authority ..... 35
III. DETMRMIMINO THE APPROACH ..... 58
The director as interpreter ..... 59
The director as ooordinator. ..... 59
IV. DESIGNIMO AND EXECUTINO THE BET ..... 62
8tjlea of cet doalgn ..... 65
Tjpes of sete ..... 65
Elements of dealgo ..... 65
Frinclpleo or doelon ..... 77
Producing a eet design ..... 79
Page
V. DESIGNING AND EXECUTING THE COSTURINO ..... 129
Two purposes of coatuning ..... 131
Three varlables of coatualng ..... 133
Producing a contume dealgn ..... 140
VI. DESIGNING AND EXECUTING THE LIGHTING ..... 162
Three variables of lighting ..... 165
Two kinde of illumination ..... 179
Producing a lighting dealgn ..... 182
VII. DESIGNING AHD EXECUTING THE MAKEUP ..... 230
Two purposea of ankoup ..... 232
Three varlablea of.makoup ..... 235
Producing a makoup doalgn ..... 241
VIII. DESIGNING AND EXCCUTING THE PROPERTIES ..... 256
Two kinds of propertios ..... 258
Produolng a property dealgn ..... 259
IX. DEBIGNIMG AND EXECUTIMG THE BOUND LIFECTB ..... 270
four rinda of a ound effecte ..... 272
Produoing a eound effects dealgn ..... 275
X. PUBICITY AND FHONT OF THE HOUSE ..... 286
Publicity oonalderationa ..... 287
Front of the Houne conalderationa ..... 288
PART III. INDEXED SUMMARY OUTLINE AND CONCLUSION
LITERATURE CITED ..... 305

## LIST OF TABLES

TablePage1. 1957-1958 SOUTH DAROTA STATE COLLEOR PLAY SEASOR. ..... 26
2. STYES OF SET DESIGN ..... 66
3. TYPES OF SETS ..... 67
4. COLOR SMMBOLISM ..... 74
5. SET COLORB FORMULAE ..... 115
6. PRODUCTIOA COLORB 8AMPLES ..... 116
7. FABKIC DRAPE ..... 136
8. FINAR COETUMING DESION FOR OFDIPUS BNX ..... 157
9. PKOPARTIES AND UBETULAEBS DF COLOR MEDIA ..... 171
10. AVAILABLE DIMMERS ..... 195
11. AVAILABLE INSTRUMENTS ..... 196
12. DESIONED DIMMER USES ..... 202
13. FINAL LIGHTINO DESION FOR DKDIRUS BEX ..... 205
14. FINAL LIOHTING CUES FOR OFEDPUB RHX ..... 213
15. FIMAL DIMMER READINOS FOF OADTHYS BEX ..... 215
16. FIAAL MAKEUP DEEION FOK OEDTPUS REX ..... 252
17. FINAL PROPERTY DESIGN FOR OFDIPUR BNX ..... 266
18. FINAL SOUND EFFECTS DESION FOR OEDTPUE GRX ..... 284

## LIST OF DIAGFAMS

Dlagram Page

1. Altar dealgn, top view ..... 102
2. Altar dealgn, aide viow ..... 102
3. Altar dealgn, front view ..... 104
4. Skewed platform dealgn, 1sometric view ..... 104
5. Altar deelgn, top view, base added ..... 104
6. Palace unit dealgn, top viow, flrot otop ..... 107
7. Palace unlt deelgn, top view, second otep ..... 107
8. Palace unit dealga, top view, third etep ..... 107
9. Palace doors and doorway, front viow ..... 108
10. Palace unlt doelgn, top Flew, fourth otop ..... 108
11. Slght 11nes of floor plan ..... 110
12. Floor plan ..... 113
13. Sot palnting ..... 117
14. Column deolgn, top view ..... 121
15. Door hinge deelga, 100metric viow. ..... 121
16. Door wounting deelgn, front view ..... 121
17. Door stand deelgn, top F1ow ..... 121
18. Control board dimer-inetrument connectione ..... 207
19. Gonerel 112uaination instrument mountinge ..... 208
20. Chorue inotrument mountinge ..... 209
21. Palace doors inotrument mountings ..... 210
22. Blind entrance instrument mountingo ..... 211

## LIST OF PHOTOORAFH8

Plato Page
I. 8ot model ..... 114
II. Set ..... 114
III. Basic cootumos ..... 159
IV. Modified men's costumes ..... 159
V. Modified men's costumen ..... 160
VI. Modirled women's costumes ..... 160
VII. Rojal costumes ..... 161
VIII. Ore planned onorus lighting ..... 221
IX. Siallar executed ohorue lighting ..... 221
x. Second planned chorus lighting ..... 222
XI. Slellar executed chorus lighting ..... 222
XII. Third planned ohorue lighting ..... 223
XIII. Siallar executed chorus lighting ..... 223
XIV. One planned palace door lighting ..... 224
XV. Siallar executed palace door lighting ..... 224
XVI. Plenned blind ontrance lighting ..... 225
XVII. Executed blind entrance lighting ..... 225
XVIII. Mareup ..... 254
XIX. Final dadioun Bax program ..... 290

## PART I. IATRODUGTIOM

## TABLE OF CONTENTS FOR PART I

Pago ..... 38tatonent of the problenDofinition of terme in the statement of the problemImportance of the problea
The Procedure ..... 4
Sources of information
Ut1llzation of Information
The Theole Organisetion ..... 5
Overall orgentzatlon
Chapter organdzatlon

## EODY FOF PAKT I

The Problen

## Stanerent of the probler

The purpose of this thesis is to help inform students of theatre bout some of the consideratione necescary in coordinating and directing tochnical areas of play production.

Detindtion of texal in the problem
"studente of theatre" refors especially to etudente onrolled in theatre coursee in collegoe.
"Tochnical areas of play production" includes eet design, conatruction, and painting; costune design and execution; llghting design and execution; properties; sound effects; makeup; ecript eolection, understanding, and interprotation; publicity; and front of the houce. The phrase oxcludes acting and direcing.

## Inooctanes of the problen

It 10 the purpose of a collego curriculum in drama to 1nfore the etudents about all areas of theatro work; the technical work comes under the Juriediction of the technical director. Consequently, thia theale in technical direction can serve as an instractional device for studonte in educational theatro by including the following: (I) definition (by onumeration) of thotechnlcal areas of play production; (2) explanation of sone general considerations in
each technical aroa, including coordination with other areas and the genoral time order for acconplishing the tochnlcal taste; and (3) application of the general considerations in oach tochnical area to the epociflc production of gedipue Ras at South Dakota State College on May 22 and 23, 1958.

## The Procedure

## Sources of 10formation

The information for this thesis was obtalned from four general source areas--text books in play production and tochnical theatre; perconal experionce in play production and tochnical theatro, eopecially at South Dakota Stato College; a dally record of the technlcal conalderationa, decisione, and activition concerning the production of Qedipun fex; and consultation with the Technicel Director of South Datota State College Theatro regarding technical consideratione for ondipun Res.

## Ut171antion of 10fornstion

A synthesis of the four sources of informetion was used to formulate the matorlal noceseary to oxplain the three general inetructional areac 11 sted under lmportance of the problom-an deflnition of techalcal areas of plaj production and general considerations of each technical area flret oxplained and then applied to 0egipus Rex.

## Orarald ocgand rindon

The thesic is divided into three naln parte-epree 11minarj pages, text, and literature cited. The text 1e further divided into three partee-introduction, bodj, and cumary topical outline and index. The bodj 1a the largest and moet complex part of the thesis and 10 further divided Into ton chaptera.

## Chnofer ocgnnization

Each chaptor in the thesie is organlzed according to the following general plan: Flrat, each chapter has a chapter table of contents; second, each chapter hae the chapter body devoted to one epeciflc technical area. The chapter body 1s Iurther divided Into two parts-ageneral conclderatione of the epeciflo technical area and application of the general conelderatione to Qedipun Ber.

## sumarary topical OUTLINe for part I

I. The Problen
A. Statement of the problem--helping inform studente of theatre about technical theatre
B. Definition of terms in the statement of the problem
C. Importance of the problen--Inatructional device In educational theatre

## 1I. The Procedure

A. Sources of information
B. Utillsetion of informetion-oformulation of material necessary to 1 nstruct studonta of theatro
III. The Thesif Organdzation
A. Overall organdzation

1. Prellainary pages
2. Toxt
a. Introduction
b. Body--olevon chapters
c. Sumary toplcal outline and index
3. Literature oited
B. Chapter organization
4. Chapter table of contente
5. Chapter body--devoted to one apeolflc technical area
a. General considerationa of the technical aroa
b. General considefatione applied to ondipue Rex

PART II. BƠDY
CHAPTER ISERECILNO THE SCRIPT
TABLE OF CONTENTS FOR CHAPTER I
Part 1. General Consideretione
1n Script Selection
Pageanowledge of playe
Knowledge of an adoquate soason
Explanation ..... 11
Doflaltion of terme ..... 12
Finde of pleyeStyles of playeStyles of econic designTJpes of cets
Enowledge of the audience
Audlonce attltudes. ..... 19
Audience knowledge. ..... 19
Knowledge of drama facilltios
Actors ..... 20
Tochnicians ..... 21
Toohnical equipront and racllitios ..... 21
Stage and wing alzo
S1ght 11noeLighting facilitloe"
Budgot ..... 23

Part 2. Serlpt Selection Conelderatione Applied to ledtpun tinPageanowledge of playeanowledge of an adèquate season
anowledge of the audionce
Audionce attltudes ..... 25
Aulionce knowledge ..... 25
Knowledge of the dram facllitloe
Actors ..... 29
Tochniclans ..... 30
Technical equipaont and facillties ..... 30
8tage and wing sizojSlght linesLighting facllitloe
sudget ..... 31

## BODY FOR CHAPTER I

Goneral Conslderatione<br>in Script Soloction

The diroctor should be at least partially reaponelble for selocting the serlpt. for he 1 s the person rosponelble for tho opocific play production. But, although ho should holp select the serlpt. it 1 e often wise for the director to consult with other theatro people and poople acquainted with the moré and beliofe of the potential audience before mering the rinal ecript eolection.

Cortainly the director must know the technical equipmont and facllltloc arallable toitho thoatroi if ho lacke such knowledge, the technical director or sonoone acqualnted with tho tochnical aspocts of tho thoatro must bo consultod. Consequontly, although soloction of the sorlpt should be the apecial province of the director, dlsouesion of ecript eoloction ia included in this tochnical direction thenio because of tho nocescary tochnical considorations in selocting a ecript. 1
lJohn Dolan. Jr.. The Act of Play Pegducthon (lot od. rov.; Now Yort: Harpor \& Brothors Publichore, 1946), p. 73. Wlllard J. Frioderich and John H. Fraeor, Sonnoer Dnelgn for
 p. 62. John Gaeaner, Profucing the Plar (lat od. rovoi Now York: The Dryden Prose, Publishore, 1953), pp. 202-203. Hubort C. Hoffner, Samuel Soldon, and Hunton D. Sellman, Modern Thentre Practice (3d. od.jnow Yorki Apploton-ConturyCrofte, Inc.. 1946), pp. 12-13. 20, 25.

In order to eelect a play, the person(s) dolng the eelecting must heve knowledge of four thinge: (1) pley ecripte, (2) an adequate play sosson, (3) the speciflc audionce, and (4) the apecif1c thestre facilitioe and equipmont.

## Roxledge of playe

No play should be eolected except upon knowledge of that play and numerous other playe by all persons responalble for the selection. ${ }^{2}$ There are so many quallty plays of all kinds, styles, moods, thenes, and settings that hesty, last alnute choice of an inforior play is unneceseary and inexcueable.

## Knowladge of an sdeavie season

Explanation
Selecting a complote season of playe can holp guarantee flve dealrable conditions. 3

1. A varloty of rinde and styles of playe can be eolectod.
2. A variety of types of eote and otyles of ecentc dealgn can be aseured.
3. A varlety in coatume design can be aseured.
4. Adrortiolng (oepeolally for a season tickot) can be nore offectively done.

2Gasener, p. 202. Heffnerípp. 12-13. 20-22, 25.
3Dolaan, p. 73. Heffner, pp. 20-21, 25.
5. Hehearsal and work schedules and equipaent and personnel utllyation oan be most effeotively planned.

Definition of terme
There le no ooncenaus of opinion by experts about what are the varloua kinde and styles of playe or types and styles of technical designs. Consequently, ayntheals of terminology will be lieted end used throughout this thesis in an effort to ensure reader understanding.

Klnde of glay.e-Playe are claselfled at a particular kind according to the generally predominant nood or emotions they evore. ${ }^{4}$

Comedy.--A comic pley 18; one in which life is treated relatively diepaselonately with a lightnees that is never overwhelmed by llfe'e paln. Comedies may be thought of at lying on a continuum from broad farce to rather serlous, thoughtful comedy.
$\checkmark$ Tragedy.--If the coaedy continuum were to be continued through progressively more serlous, more pasilonate, more thoughtfully involved playe, the end of the continuus oppoalte faroe would be tragedy.

Sorlous drama. --The middle portion of auch a continuum 1s designated by some ae serlous drama.

There ere no definite breaking pointe on the continuum which divide comedy from serlous drama from tregedy. And
${ }^{4}$ Dolman, pp. 76-77. Friederich, p. 32. Gaesner; pp. 44-52. Hoffner, pp. 66-70.
experte may dieagree as to claseiflcation of agivon play. What 1s important in deciding upon the kind of production, hovever, 18 not the label but the relative location of the play on the continuum.

Sticles of Dlara.--The atyle of a play rofors to the otgle of drasatic writine the author used. Thero is evon greater disagreemont anong exports about the labols, dofinitions, quellties, and limitations of etyles of pleys then there 10 about kinds of playa. 5 Following are the olaosiflcations uaed in this theals. 6

- Reallsm.--Reallen 1s a stylo of dramatic writing in which the author alme to create an llluelon or life as it is or alght be liveds the greatest volune of Ccoldental plays falle in this category.
$\checkmark$ Maturallen.-- Naturellen 1s the stjle of dranatic writing that arose in opposition to the eelected and carofully arranged detalle of resllen. Although naturallem ettenpted to doplet lifo as it truly 1 s (without solection and arrangenont of facte), it soon becane hlghly eelective (choosing only the cordid thinge of life and nearly ignoring the nore pleasant).

Romanticism.--Romanticism 1 s a atjle of dramatic writing in which solection 1s not of probable facte but of

5Friodor1ch, pp. 3, 22. Hórfnor, pp. 70-71.
6Friederich, pp. 3-8. Gaesier, pp. 53-67. Heffner, pp. 70-73.

1mprobabllitles-adventure, fantasy, and 80 on. "Romant1clea . . prosents only a 11 fo of the theatro which the epectator belloves in not bocauce of his rooognition of roallty but rather through hie wilful entrance into a pect with the actore whorobs he w111 accopt their mode of thoatrical 11fo so long as $1 t$ can intorest and ontortain h1a."7

Claselcism or neo-claselclsm. --The ancient Greok plajs are claselfled as classic in stjle; lmitations of them are reforred to as neoclaselc. Classicism and noo-classicien do not ala at railes in language, charactore, or narmor of presentation; the problens thej troat and thelr thomes are frequently elgniflcent for men of all tiaes and cultures. Syabolian,--In 80 far as any plaj solocte cortaln factors to etand for, or eymbolize, the realitj fros which thej are seloctod, it could bo called eyabolic. Howover, soae plaje ut11120 ambolic soloction to a much groator degroe, and the tem eymbollsm 1s generally applied onlj to those plaje in which the eymbolisa is an intogral factor in underatanding the theme of the plaj.

Exproselonien.--Seloction 10 ontirolj oubjectivo 1n expreesionism, for eelected factors attempt to reveal and 1ntorprot (not outor objectivo actions) but inner thoughte end emotione.

[^0]A given play may have a mixture of soveral styles of econos or may be entirely of one etyle. For anj given produc= tlon the style(s) (regardless of the labele used) must be doteralned and underatandably communicated so that acting, direct1 nb , and technical work can be coordinated with the play's etyle.
stpler of peante detion,--Sconic dosign styles diffor somowhat from dramatic writing styles and aro somowhat more numerous. 8

Reallem.--As in dramatic writing, reslien in sconic dealgn attempts ropresentation of what would pase for roallty. Feallatic sota are generally thejeasiest and least expensive to construct as well as frequently belng the least interesting and offectlvo.

Waturallen.-- Katurallem in scenic dosign as in dramatic writiag attompts to present the ontire reallty with no dotalle onlted. Theatrical substitutes are not used for the real artioles. For example, earth (not a palnted ground cloth) is used on the stage floor if the setting calls for an earthon floor. Maturallem 1e expensive and generally unneceseary. Reallty is modifled in alaplified reallan (ajmbollea) or 1mpreseloniem by a eore otrict selection of detalle than occurs in neturallen or resllem."

8Dolman, pp. 299-321. FriPodor1ch, pp. 8-24. Gasener, pp. 53-67. 73-91. Following, p. 66.

Slmpllfled roallem, or symbollem. --S1mplifled reallem, or eynbollen, emploje minimun scenery of selected cheracter1stlc elenente, or eynbole, to represent the whole. A church window (accurate in detall) may stand for the interior of a church.

Impreseioniam.--Impreseionisa 1s lite elmplified real1en, or eymbollem, in 1 te careful selection of characterietic detall, but diffors from it in that the chosen elements are not complete in thenselves but are reduced to their moat 1mportant ilne(s) end/or mase(es). A brick wall becomes a painted ground row with only a fow lines to suggest bricke.

Or reallea nay be co altered and exaggorated as to becone basically non-reallstic.

8tyllen. --As in symbollsm, the designor in etjllem takes the foras of reallty to thelr escence, but he then alters the objective esesence of the form in a subjective way by exaggerating the form to emphesize the exaggeration of the ecript.

Exprescionism.--Expreseionisa is elmilar to styllen, but exaggeration of the phyeical setting is in accord with the exaggoration not in the play'e theme but in the character's mind.

Thoatricallam.--Theatricallam may omploy aspecte of some other dealgn otylea but 10 © 1 atinguiehed by the fact that it omploys thoatre sconory as such without any attompt to camourlage the fact that $1 t$ f粦 sconery.

Constructiviem.--Constructiviam enploys atage sconery for utilltarian purposes to the exclusion of the eesthotic. The basic construction etructure 1a loft bare and unadorned.

Formallem.--Forasllem 1 e the sconlc design farthest renoved from reallty. Although other etjles etert with realllty and oxaggorate, distort, slaplify, uglify, or beautify 1t; formallem diaponces with roallty and presonts morely a pleying aree with or without platforas, draperies, or aky cyclorama. Whon usod alone, formallem has a apacious, austoro dignity in hermony with a lialted number of plays. Consequently, formellem 1s frequently comblned with 1mpreselonistic or eymbollc sot ploces.

Style in designing as in writing is frequently a conblnation of eeveral etyles. The sconlc dealgn atyle of a givon eot may be givon a difforent label by difforent porsone; comanicetion and underatanding of the style of persons working with it 1 e of primary 1mportance.

Troe of ente. --The type of sconery ueed will dopend upon ecene shifting problems, budgot, and labor avallable as woll as upon the kind and etyle of play and the etyle of sot design. Any number of ingenioue devicee maj be used by a glven designer; some common types are briofly listed hore for reforence. 9

[^1]Unit eot.--The unit eot naj consist of rlate, plastic ploces, and almple functionel furnituro which may bo roar ranged in an unlialtod number of pattorns. Or anit oet may oonolst of a pormanont basic structure altorod by variod utillzation of the set openings and furnishinga. Or a unit set may be reveralble ao that two entirely different color patterne and painted effecte are poosible. Or a unit sot maj include as basic unit any nuaber of short flate hingod togother; such a unit oot la sonotimes callod a scroon oot.

Curtaln cot.--Curtain ooto aro noot offoctivo if usod with intoroating plastic ploceo and stage propertios. The curtalno thonselves should be deenphaselzod as nuch as pooelbleoe sufflciontly dark to abaorb light, dovold of hanging plctures, not draped in door or window ohepeo, and 00 on. A curtain sot frequently usee stage properties for the eot design. An alternativo 10 to uee a cut down oet with the curtaine.

Prien cot.--A prien conelots of three Mate hinged together at two edged and hooked together on the third 0 that the triangle may be equilatorel or 100000lee. Any nump ber of priane any be arranged in anj number of pattorne with or wlthout otops, platforme, doora, and 00 on.

Book set.--A book sot 1 made by hinging several flate of the sane olze to permanent central post from which they ewing beck and forth much as the leaveo of book would do. Pormanent plastic pleces can be used downetage in a book eet.

Scenery eay aleo be ehifted by use of magone, disce, a rovolving otage, or llying. Drops and ecrime, or gauzes, are eopecially effective Nown pleces.

Pormanont set.-oA eingle permanont sot may be used to deplot one locale and time: multiple permanent set (come posed of various locales) may be uaed to deplet several loceles.

Llght aot.--Although all sets must be designed in accord with the lighting equipaent and facilitioe, aose sets are staged with lighting as the prodominant factor.

## Knowindes of the auginnce

Audience attitudes
Any audience haa lte projudicea, beliefa, likee, and dialites; to dierogard the baelc attitudee of the aajority of the audience is 11 kely to reault in lose of the audience-e an osential ingrediont in dranatic prosentation.

Audience knowledge
If caraful consideration of the attitudes of the audience 1- 1mportant 80 1s carerul consideration of the knowledge of the audionce, for a great deal of Inatruction can be done through drama.

The best theatre program avolds the areas of doep audience projudice and esete the areas of audionce ignorance so that $1 t$ may introduce now and vital 1eevee and 1deas. 10

[^2]
## 8norlades of the <br> dmen facilutins

A play must also be selected with knowledge of the facllities that will mete ite production poseible or 1mpose sible-ectore, tochniciane, tochnical equipaont and facilities, and budget.

Actors
There are six considerations to meke in selecting a play or sesson of plajs sultable for the given actors. 11

1. Be as cortain as possible of at least one capable person for each essentlal role. To do Hamlet without a strong Hamlet would be unwlse ladeed.
2. Be as certain as poesible of at least one capable person for each ohiof supporting role. To do Hariget with a otrong hamlet and a weak supporting cast would be extromely unvise, too.
3. Eopecially 1 n educational thoatre, provide each actor with a ohance to plaj difforent tjpes of roles. This can easlly be done by selecting playe with different types of roles and/or by utilising the same actor in widely difforent roles in elnilar plaje.
4. Especially in educational theatre, at some time ut111ze all persons who wish to be cast--experienced and inexperienced, capable and less capable, and so on.

11Dolman, pp. 73-74. Friederich, p. 62. Gasaner, pp. 203-207. Heffner, pp. 20, 24-25.
5. Choose plays that will be onjoyable and useful to the persone acting in them. "The real teet of a pley ie 1ts offect upon the players."12
6. Try to make avallable additional opportunities and experience for the serlous students of theatre.

Technt clane
The abllity and experience of the techniclane is aleo a factor to consider in solection of plays. 13 Although heving an inexperienced and/or limited technical crew may not often alter the cholce of play, it often will alter the atyle and type of eet and other designe.

In educational theatre, the tochnician, too, muot be glven a chance to learn hle art; thle comes only fromactually dolng the technical wort. The technician muet have a chance to perform a varlety of technical work with a varlety of typee and etyles of eot, lighting, and other technical dealgne.

Particularly extlled technlolane (especially eorlous studente of theatre) should be utilized in both design and execution of the technical work.

Technical equipsont and facilities

No show can be done if the tochnical equipaent and facllltiee to do $1 t$ are not or annot be made avallable.

12Dolnan, p. 74.
13Frlederlch, pp. 62-64, 161-68. Heffner, pp. 20, 25.

In any show there are numerous ways of doing any of the tochnical offocts. But, if no feasible way 1s known, the show becomes an 1mposelbility; or, if the feasible vay(o) greatly alter and limit the show, it may be an unadrisable selection.

The number and kind of faoility and equipmont limitations that a theatro may have are inflnito; many are pocullar to the given theatre alone, some are comeon to many theatroseo stage and wing size, sight lines, 11 ghting equipaent. 14 There must of course be adequacj of costumes, props, mareup, cound effects, and $s 0$ on, but there 1s greater flexiblilty In these areas than in stage and wing eize, sight ines, and lighting oquipsont.

Shate and mag alre.a-A stago can be made saller with sot pleces, but incroselng the sizo of small stages ond/or wing aroas has groat 1 imitations.

Elaht linene-If olght IInos from givon soat aro prohlbitive, the coat can be loft unsold provided the longth of Fun and arorage adience 120 warrant such.procedure.

Ilahting facilitice.--Although 11 ghting eyotome can frequently be more flexible than is reallzod, one cannot exceed dimaing faollitios and lino capacitios. Inadequate lighting oquipaent 1 e froquently ono of the strongest tochalcal dotrinonts in a thoatro.

14Eolman, p. 73. Friodorich, pp. 49-59. Geesner, pp. 203, 316-18. Heffrer, pp. 20, 25, 229.

Budget
The arallable budget muet be oonaldered;i5 extraneous coste arlse in all aspects of the theatre and care must be taken to reaain within the budgot. Coordinating the budget with the total soason of playe is frequently an aseet in planalag the thoatro program.

Naturelly, all the minute technical plans for the season of showe cannot be made at the tlme of the selection of showe, but general technical lialtations will ofton alter the possible style of productions. Enowledge of the techalcal factors 1e esantial to complete understanding of the type of ceason poselble with a given selection of playe.

Serlpt Selection Considerations applied to Qedlpur Rer

## Knonledse of pleze

At South Darota State College the playe are chosen by a play eolecting comittee which includen the director(s) and other drama inotructore and sometimes also Includes drama studente and/or Englian inotructore.

The play celeoting conmitteo meete (sometimes in May, sometimes in septomber) to detorinine the season of plays.

At the first meeting, all committoe mesbers can subalt names of poselble plaje for production. Each play 1 . discussed and elther lmediately diecarded or retalned on a tentativo 118t.

15Gasener, p. 203. Heffner, pp. 20, 22-23, 25.

Aftor the firat moeting, comittee membere read and/or reread those plays on the tontative 11 ot with which thej are not fully fanlliar. Additional meotings of a olmilar nature are had unt11 some conconous of opinion 1s apparent. At the final meeting, the season of playe is chosen. Qedhpus Rex was chosen in May of 1957 as part of tho $1957-1958$ eeeson of plays.

## Enowladge of an

 sodenurte maronPlaye at South Dakota State College are genorally chosen by the season $s 0$ that the adrantages in variety and planning can be asured.

The college theatre calender usually includes three
full length plays, a mualcal show, an evoning of one-act playe (chosen by the student directors), and two student vari--ty shows. The 1957-1958 calonder as sot up in May of 1957 included the following:

October 10, 11, 12-0The Tender Trap
Decomber 12, 13. 14--The Erucind
Januery 23, 24, 25--4 otudent rarloty show
Fobruary 13. 14, 15-00ndpun Ber
Mareh 28, 29--A etusent veriety show
May 1. 2, 3-0-0rahomit
May 23--An ovening of one-act playe
The ectual sesson was altored betuse of a elckness opldemic: there was no December show, The cmalible was given in Fobruary.

Ondpun kex vae givon on May 22 and 23 , and the ovoning of one-sct playa wee ollmineted.

Table 1 indicates the varlety $1 n$ type and atyle of dramatic writing, sconic dealgn atyle and type, and costume dealgn for the south Derote stete College 1957-1958 aesaon of plaje.

## Mnoylades of <br> the Audience

The State College audionce (ae most audioncea) ia widely varied in projudicea, bollofo, likes, diellkoa, and knowledge. However, a general pattern of attitudes and knowledge 1: procent.

## Audience attltude

The balc attitude of the rajorlty of the audience 10 Judged to be overt adhoronce to rlgld and dogatic rellgloua dicta. On occaliona membere of the audience heve been known to count the numbor of "damna" in a play or to 1mpute the portrayal of drinking or curaing in a charactor to the etudent coting the cherecter.

## Audience knowledge

The baalc area of knowlodge in which the najority of the audionce 10 moat lacking 10 the arte--literature, drama, dance, maic, painting, sculpture, and so on.

For thle reeson, gedipuater wea perhepa the moat inatructive play of the eesson becauae of the style of

PABLE 1
1957-1958 SD8C PLAT 8PASOM

| Play | Dramstic uriting |  | Scent a Doalgn |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Costune } \\ & \text { Design } \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Kind | $8 t 516$ | Stylo | JJFe |  |
| The Ponder Prap | comedy | Roantiel en- Realian | Reall 8 E | Ferwanent, one unlt | Nodern dreee |
| The Grucible | Serlour preme | ReallenS50bol1em | 85abol18 | Curtalne a ninlmay Frop set | l7th centupy Anerican |
|  | Comedy <br> (Muel eal Show) | Romantiel fen | 8tgl1sm | Plown droms a out-outs | 29th century fiestern A. |
| Oodicue fox | Irizedy | Clasa1018 | ForacilenEJraboll em | Pormichent, one unit | Mod1 11 ed anclent Greet |

drematic vriting oaployed, the use of poetry and dance, and the hietorlcal period from whioh it cane. Aesuredly, the alzs of the eudience for Dedipun gex was lese than that for The Tender trap or aciabomel, but, although audience elze 1 e one indication of the usefulnese alven play has for lite prospective audience, it is not the only indication. In addition to mating arilable a source of knowledge not common to the mejority of the audience, Oedipus kex aleo provided entertainnont for the segment of the audience which already know, underotood and enjoyed Greek drama.

The speciflc translation ${ }^{16}$ chosen frow the three conaldered ${ }^{17}$ was judged as the one least poetic, nost llke dally converation, and, therefore, the one which would be least unueval to the maforlty of the audience.

There are, of course, a greater number of translatione than three. The three coseldered were in sosowhat readily acoeselble acting editione and generally falthful to the orlginal source.

Some of the h1etorlcally woll-known adaptatione are lacking in fldellty to the orlginal:

> A comparlson of sophoole play with the modorn adaptations of varlous authors is profltable and onllghtening.

16The Thaban Playe trans. E. F. Watling (Baltimore, Md.: Fonguln Booki Inc., 1957), pp. 25-68.
 Oxford University Prose, 1950), pp. 161-210. Seren Eepout Grent Pleyg, ed. Whitney J. Oatea and Iugene $O^{\top}$ Noill, Jr. (New York: Random House, 1950), pp. 117-82. Thebrn Plele, pp. 25-68.

The most etriking difforence, perhape, it the oharp contrast betwoen tho eevore claselcion of the Grook and the oxtrome romantlcien of the French verolons. The longth of a Groot tragody, furthormore, 1a obriously not sufficlont for a modorn prosentation, ospocially aftor the choral songe have beon omittod. Every modern adaptor, therefore, must add to the plot. 18

Tho gedlpe of Cornollle (1659) altera the original play by etreseing the author's oub-plot and by altoration of the character of Oodipue from one which morite our sympathy to one which merite our dielite. 19

Drydon and Lee in thoir translation (1679) omphaeize thoir own ab-plot and molodramatic soncationalien in action, language, and charactere. "Some brilliant etrokes, however, are found in the play. The best of these, perhape, are the 111 omen of Jocasta's epeoches upon her firat ontrance and the motivetion of Oedipus' 1gnorance of the circumetences of Leius' death."20

The gadipe of Voltalre (1718) "1s perhape the beet of the more famoue modern vereione."21 The minor plot tende to add to the play and rocode in importance as the man plot bullde. Both Oodipue and Jocasta aro troated as ajmpathotic and admirable charactors. "Of the changes made in the Sophoclean metorial 1 teolf porhape the final econes, which have boon influonced by Sonoca, are tho mont ouccosoful.

18ph111p whaloy Harah, $A$ Handboot of clontcel pram (stanford, California: stanford Univeraity Prose, 1948), p. 114. 191p1d., pp. 114-115. 20ighd.. p. 116. 21Indd.

Here Oedipue 1e forced himeelf to reveal his identity to Jooasta, and at the rerj end Jocasta comite sulcide on atage."22 Knowledxe of the

## dran craplithos

The selection of plays at South Dakota state College 1s made bj personc acqualnted with the drama program--the majority of the student actore and techniciane who will be arallable, the equipment and facillties, and the budget.

Actors

1. An abaolutely escontial person 18 needed for the role of Oedipus in 0edhpun Bex. There was a sorious poselbility that the role alght not be oast. iA porion now to Stato Colloge Theatre was utilized in the part, but the chance of not findIng such a person was one of the disadvantages in eelection of gedinu Rex.
2. Gonerally epeaking there aro onough capable actore to 5111 a 11 inted number of support roles ouch as one finde 1n Qedipus binx.
3. The typee of roles in a Greek play are genorally unlque to the claceloe; the ohorue menbere eepeolally would not have a chance to play a elmilar role excopt in anothor clacelcal play.
4. At state College it 1 e frequently difflcult to celect playe which will utillze the numoroue actresees and
the fover actors. But in Oadipun Rex, all studente wo attended tryoute were able to be caet for the following reaeone: (1) the chorus of Theban elders was altored to include not only nen but nen and women, (2) the male attondant's apeoch wae broken and glven to two women, and (3) many inexperioncod (ae well ae nove experienced) actors were utllized in the chorus.
5. Studente of theatre do not frequently have a chance to work on and in a claseloal drama; such an opportunity io, in general, revarding for the actors.

Techniclane
The greatest nuaber of the technlcal theatre etudente at State College are also interested in acting. The close production datee of orlahoind and gedion ker (both relatively large oast shows) would indicate allelted number of techniciane for both mounting and running the two ohowe. Coneequently, elmpllolty of technical dealgn for both showa would be a neceeelt.

Equipaent and faollities
grace and man miege.--The state College otage is inadequate in e1se. The elghteen foot depth 1e a limitation for nearly any plan and often cauce日 grose teohnical modiflcatione. The proaoenlum helght is a lialtation nearly ac often as the otage depth. A maximu ralaing of the act teaser to flfteon foet permite only ten and one halfiそo thirteen foet in hoight of the atage rear to be vielble from the balcony. In addition,
a flfteen foot proscenium height createe probleme in concealing the llghte from the main floor front rown. Currently utileation of the rear otage wall io eapecially liaited by the senipermanent inetallation of a large movie sereen lese than thirteen feet from the floor.

The prosceniun width of thirty-elght foet 1e celdoma 11altation, but wing apace 1s deoldedly lisited and crowded during nearly any ohow. Stage depth and a weak grid prevent the Rying of much heary ecenery.

Gleht ligas. --Approximately one-fourth of the seate in the house are beyond the proecenlum opening. te a coneequence, half of the width of the otage reay 10 cut off from part of the house and nearly all of the wing area 10 visible to eome part of the house. Thie makes concealing the winge and etill maintaining large and sufficient ontrances a problem.

Lighting facilitien, - The light control board is often a 11altation for designing. of the olxteon dimers, ten are permanently or eom-permanently attached. The board 10 located backatege in the blocked off wing area, and execution of the light cues 16 moot difficult.
$\Delta 11$ of theee factore would undoubtedly 1mpose their lialtatione on the technical dealgne for gedipun Rex, but none would apparently entirely prevent the production.

Budget
The drama program at state College is primarily financed by atudent fee although adalealon 10 charged to non-atudenta;
consequently, the jear' b budget can be cloeely approximated and apportioned among the ceaeon'e plajs.

## GHAPTEX II

## UNDRRGTANDINO THE SCHIPT

TABLE OF CONTENTS FOR CHAPTER II

## Introduction for choter II

Part 1. Genoral Approechoe to Underatanding a Script
Page
Rellance on self alone ..... 35
Rellance on authority alone ..... 35
Rellance on both celf and authorlty ..... 35
Part 2. This Thosís Approach to Understanding the Script
Body for Gmpter II
Part 1. Genoral Underatanding of Greek Drama
Developmont of aroot dramatic writing
Epic tradition ..... 37
Lyric tradition ..... 37
Dramatic tradition ..... 40
Early devolopmonteFifth contury B. C, developmente
Forencle tradition ..... 48
Dramatic proaontation otruotured ..... 49
OrcheotreTheatronStageStonePalnted sceneryAdditional equipaent
Dranatic procontation ceromonio ..... 52
Coremonial competitionCorenonial support
Dramatlc proeentatlon performere ..... 55
Porsonnel
Cootuaes
Kaste and wigeFootwoar
Part 2. Specif1c Underotanding of Oedlpu Bex

## IATRODUCTION FOR CHAPTER II

Goneral Approaches to Understanding a Scrlpt

## Belinace on colr sloge

There 1s a phllosophlcal controversy about the way in whioh understanding should be derived from any writton metorial. At the one oxtreme, it 1 s argued that a writton noscage, if it is moaningful and applicable to any given reader or 11 atener, should be understandable to that person by his resding or hearing the meseage and not by his know1ng what others eaj about it or under what conditions it was writton. "In reading literature our 1mpreselons are everything and . . . outside them there 18 nothing to be found."1 Belisnce_on Authoptit glone

At the other extrome, there are those who foel that every word, stage direction, reference should be documented 1f poesible. "Any wort more than fow hundred years old must baffle ua unlese we have authorities constantly at our -1bow."2

Reliance on both self and authority

Others belleve that nolther extreme 1 e desirable;
that the worth of individual undergtanding and hiatorioal

[^3]documentation are integreted parts of an 1deal whole; that each percon muct rely on hlmself to galn hio unlque undorstanding of any message, but his understanding can be onriched by utilizing the "timo-binding"3 function of mantind which onablea one person to beneflt fron the knowledge of other poople and other agen. This concept 1 a applied to the under etanding of Greek drana by Bernadotte Porrin who says, "Oreek drames. . . etill havo powor to hold and lapresa a modorn Eaglish-apoating audience. But those dranas gain in power. whether acted or read, as hearer or reader succeods in realizing the pecullar conditions under which they wero orlginally proouced."4

Th1 0 Thesio Approach to Underistanding
a script
In this thosis, the thind of the listed possible approaches to undorstanding a script 1s accepted-aroliance on both self and authoritJ.

Solf rollance is used in the poraonal appreciation of the plaj, the specific utilization of technical matorial, and the epecif10 approach to the technical dealgalng and execution.

Rellance on authority 1 e ucod to help detornine tochnical areas and thelr generel considerations. Authoritj 1 s also used

3wendell Johnson, People in Quandacien (New Yorks Harper Brothers, 1946), pp. 162-67.

Aorenk Dreme ed. Bornadotte Perrin (Now York: D. Appleton and Company, 1904). p. 111.
to underatand many thinge about the script itself.

## BODY FOR CHAPTER II

## General Understanding of Greek Drame

## Dezelopment of areat <br> drantic Mriting

$\checkmark$ The extant Greok plays grow out of a tradition of opic. lyrlc, and dramatic pootry and were lator influonced by the following forencio tradition. 5

Eplc tradition
The origin of all figuree of Grook plaje is in the Honeric oplce ${ }^{6}$ which are dated from the tonth to the olghth conturies B. C. 7 In the oxtant plays, the oplc tradition of long narretive epoton poetry 1 e ovident in the meseengers' epeeches. 8

Lyric tradition
The lyric tredition, which flourished in the seronth and sixth conturios B. C., 9 grow up around the rostivals

5The Thepan Play, trans. E. F. Watling (Baltimore, Md.s Ponguin 800ki Inc., 1957, p. 8.

Gacelt Dreambe p. $\nabla$. RIchard O. Moulton, The Anatent Glanicis_Drams (2d ed.i Oxford: The Clarondon Prese, 1898). pp. 4. 14. Lauchlan Maclean Watt, Aitic \& Ellinpethen Treagy (Now York E. P. Dutton Co.. 1908), Pp. 16, 18.
 Goner and Roman Ciansion (United Statee: Berron E Educational Serles, Inc., 1946), p. 6.

8Moulton, pp. 15, 145. 9Thaban Finfe p. 8.
which the Dorlane of Poloponnesue devoted to the god Dlonysue. 10 The lyric tradition of short aung pootry 10 orident in the ataninge or choral odes, of the extent plays.

The lyric tradition grow out of worohip for Dlonyeus, or Eacchus, the Greet god of fertillty and wine, whose elgnifloance to the Greok people was not unllke the elgniflcance of the Holy Splelt in the primitive Chrlatian Church. Dionyeue as lord of 11 fo , subject to death in 11 fe and llfe after death, was closely associated with departed couls. As great ineplrer he was assoclated with the cultue of the Muses. Ae god of vines and vines his aseoolation for the early Greete wae elestar to the aseociation of Chelst as the giver of graln and broad for Chrlatians. Consequently, for the Groeke, Dlonysus sorved at the source for ovory asplration and inaplration, highor and lower; and the vintage fostivale prosented oach jear in his honor roflected both kinds of 1 napiration in the rellglous enthuslaem of the choral folk songs and denoes. 11

Some of the choral folk songe and dances wore rustic, jovial, and rlotoualy gay. 12 "In modorn lifo all the force of rellgion 1 e ofton ineufficiont to control appotite for
$10_{\text {gratk Dramas, p. }} \mathrm{V}$.

 The Modern Library, Inc., 1929才, p. It Geretr Dremer, p. 71. J. P. Mahaffy, A Histocx of clabitegi ORet hiterature i How Yort: Harper \& Brothors, 1880), 1, 230-32.
vinous excese, where roligion and appotite were on the same alde it 1 e no wonder that D1onjelac festivale wore orgles of wild exoltoment."13 Theso songe and dances of "lowor" ineplration wore later nore closely associated with the Greok eatjr drames.
$\checkmark$ sone of the choral folk songs and dances--turbulent, 1apreselve, fich In tragic oontente--wore the direct forerunners of the Greok tragedies. ${ }^{14}$ These "high" Inepiratione developed into the dithyranble hyme of praiee to Dlonjeus, which were perfected toward the end of the seventh century B. C. bj arien. In the perfected otate, the dithyrasb had a otructure of etrophe and antlotrophel5 and was perforaed as an 1mttation of part of Dionyeus' lifo--hie paealon, death, resurrection. $\Delta t$ the Dionjalac epring festival a chorus of Ffty min ldontifled thencolvee with Dionjoue' attondante (a trein of eatjre-ohalf goat and half man) by vearing goat atine and oinging and dancing laltativoly around an altar placed in the conter of the occhestes, or circular dancing place. (Their song was called "tragoldia" or "tragoodia," the eong of the goat orin weareras fron its nane comes the word--tragedy.) "The real dancing of the Oreoks is a loet

13Moulton, p. 6.
${ }^{14}$ Eove Elaye p. x. Areck Deranae pp. v-vil1. Mahaffy, I. 230-32. Moulton, p. 8. Ro1nhold, P. 56. Beren Plekes. x11. Watt, p. 7.

15Foll owl ng, p. 46.
art, of which the nodern ballet 18 a corruption. . . . . It wee en art which ueed bodily motion to convey thought: ae in opeech the tongue articulated worde, 0 in dancing the body smayed and gesticulated into meaning."16 One can infor that a deaf person could attend the performance of a perfected dithyranb and gain as much meaning from the movemont alone es a blind person could have gained from the worde alone.

## Dramatic tradition

The drametic tradition, which flourlehed in the plifth contury B. C. ${ }^{17}$ grow up around 1mitation of the 11 ves and actlolities of Dlonyeus and other gode and horoes. The drematic tradition of acted poetry is ovident in the dialogues of the oxtant plajo.

Eacly derelopagnth. - The etep by which the dramatie form flrst broke through the lyric form was the eplitting of the chorus into two semi-choruses for brief dialogues. Although Arion may have ineorted euch epoken verses between the choral odes, it is Theeple who 1 e credited with initiating the whenle and the lapersonating actor. The dhende or recitative salo, vas givon by the chorus leador, or gocrphagul, and responded to by the rest of the chorus, or ghoceyper Soon the cheale wae delegated to eone othor chorus member, and the

16Moulton, p. 2. 17 Theban Plarg p. 8.
leader 1apersoneted Dionyeus, acting out his eufforinge and joy, Later, ell of Dionyeus' reletives, frlende, and foes wore brought into the action; the dialogue, charactors, and plot of drama devoloped as the lyric parte receded. Thle sorles of transitions might be litened (1) in form to the developant of opere and 1 te ovolution into muelcel showe and (2) in content to the Paseion Play. 18

Impersonetione were soon peseed from Dionyelac aseociations to any herolc or sacred legonds about the gode or heroes. It 1s Phrynichus, Theopis' successor, who 1s credited with the firet drasatization of recont historioal evonte, as well es the innovation of femele perts to be carried by male alngere or actors. 19

Eleth contury B. C. derelopmentr. - -All of the precoeding developmente lald the historical foundation for the work of the three great Greot tragediane-aneschylus, Sophocles, and Euripides. Aesehylus, 20 the first in time (bom in $525 \mathrm{~B}, \mathrm{C}$. ) of the three, eerved herolcally in the battles of Marathon, Salamis,

18 Eifteon plays. p. xi. oreek pramar. pp. ix-x. 40 Inticoduotion te Dremb ed. Joy B. Hubbell and John 0. Beaty (Now Yorks The kacelllan Company, 1927), pp. 20-22. Moulton, pp. 11. 12, 14. Watt, p. 9.

19pifteen plark p. xilit. Grook dremag, p. x1.

${ }^{20}$ Ficheon playe pp. $1 x, x, x 11$, xiv, xilit. Four playe,
 lation (Now Yort: The Dlal Prose, 1952). P. vili. An Introduce E10n, P. 27. J. P. Maheffy, I, 242, 24B. Relnhold, pp. 56, 60. Serno Piale pp. xill-xilit. Elften Phare p. 8. watt, pp. 10-11.
and Platea and was bettor known in hls 11 do as a warpior than as a poet; however, his contributions in the latter area have been more lastingly algnificant.

Ho directed his own plays, served as atage manager for them, sometlme took the lead in them, reduced the chorus Prom flfty to twelve, increased the number of actors from one (the protagonist) to two (the protagonist and his foll), added long flowing costumes, used tombs and etatues and altars upon the atage, aded the three door beckground entrance, and wrote h1s playe as totralogleseofour chaptore (three tragedios and a satyr dramal of a alagla myth.

Aeschylus' playe-owlth their lofty, herolc oharacters and rich, heavy language-odealt with the univeraal olgniflcanoe of religion and thoology ac lawe for governing lifo; his study of human affalpowas only means of elucidating rellgion and theology for h1m.

Of the seventy to ninety plays Desckylus wrote, seven remaln today, and twelve to flfteon won victorles at the Greok oontests wher they wore exhlbited, apperently every other year.

The second in time of the three great Greek tragedians was sophocles, 21 who was born in 496 or 495 B. C. and died in 405 B. C. The wealth of hie parents made pooslble an excellent

[^4] Theban Pigas. pp. 7-8, 10 . hatt. p. 11.
education for Sophocles. He did not distinguish h1mself as a military leader (perhaps because Greece was in relative peace during most of his life), but he was of some impor tance in politieal affaira. However, he was primarily known In his time and later as a poet.

Sophocles, like Aeschylus, directed his own plays and acted as stage manager for them, but his weak volce enabled him to take only occasional minor roles. He added a third actor (The three actors could fill six or more parts.), increased the chorus from twelve to flfteen, and separated the lyric chorus further from the dramatic action. Sophocles ${ }^{\prime}$ plays were not in strict tetralogical sequences: each was a complete unit in itself. During his career, scene painting, maske, pading, and footwear slso became a part of Greek drama.

Sophocles' plays dealt with the dignity, worth, and value of man as gulded by heaven and lte eternal laws; his characters were well written--true to 11 fe and type and self consistent. He was preocoupied with the theological mystery of man's fate.

Of the Bo to 125 plays Sophoeles wrote, seven remain today, and elghteen to twenty won vietorles at the Greek contests where they, too, evidently appesred every other year.

Eurlpides 22 (born in 485 or 480 B. C., died in 406 B.C.) wae the third in time of the great Greet tragedians. He vae a frlend of Socrates, echolarly, changed hie primary interest from peinting to literature, remained relatively free fron public duties, and deroted h1a life to scholastic and 11 terary work.

Euripidee introduced the prologue, dewe ex mating, leas grand etyle of language, and new and unorthodox viewe in reinterpretation of the traditional legende.

Eurlpides, a questioner full of skeptiolen and uncertainty, wae the most human of the three tragediane and the olosest to modern man in feellng. He was concerned not with rellgious or other inetitutione or theology but with the othical probleas of ean. His playe, euperb and genuinely pathetic etudies of human probleme, are fllled with pejchological analyols of his characters.

Of the ninety-two playe Euripides wrote, elghteen or nineteen reanin todey. However, only four or flve won at the Greek conteste; although he apparently exhiblted approximately elghty-eight.

The three great Greek tragedians through coapetition in partially contemporary lives developed the form of the extant Oreek tragedies--their etructure, language and poetic devices, and uee of ohorus.

[^5]In atructure, Greek tragedies are divided into five genorel pertes 23 prologues en explenstion in monologue or dialogue of the altuation at the play'a beginning; preados. the ontrance and flrat ode of the chorus; \&degede, the plot developeental acts or ecenes of the play (all--uaually four or flve in numbernedivided from one anothor by fienlmal the shatas. choral dea following the action of each epleode; and exedob, the action aftor the last ginalmon during which the chorua and all actore leave the atage.

The language throughout Greek tragedj la alaed not at realiatic converaational dialogue but rather at lofty beauty and 15, therefore, highly artificien ${ }^{24}$ The Greek audience mow that the Groek play was not a representation of the life around thom, but rather ane man's vielion of aniveraelly faalliar ejth. And ao, the atilted language was as appropriate for thee as Bible verse 1 e for a Christian viowing a reenactment of the nativity.

Ianblc moter was moat comonly used, probably becauce it was a compromiae between converation and a alean rellgioue chant, but changes in feeling or action in the play were accompanied by changes in the aetripal pattern. 25 Iamblc

[^6]trineter 1a frequently ueed in short dramatic dialogues or monologues; trochelc feet are somet1mes used for sutien outburate.

The parado had a eet pattern of rhythme and movemonte: 26 The chorus entered to a marching rhythe, their first lyric ode of lamble pentameter or hexameter was divided into strophe and antistrophe with a poselble epoce and/or menode(e). The flrat etanza of the initial ode was the flrat strophe, during which the chorus moved away from the altar and to the right. Then, during the next stanza, or flrst antietrophe, the chorus moved toward the alter. There were any number of stropho-antistrophe groupa; a second group would heve required movement to the left of the altar; thereafter. the group movemente continued to alternate to the right and then to the left of the altar. Two etropho-antlstrophe groups alght or might not have beon broken by a menode of movement around the sltar. If the finsl stanze was sccompanied by moroment around the altar, it wae called an epode.

The stacima odes wore generally in lamblc pentameter or hexaneter and frequently followed a pattern of stropheantistrophe with or without mesode(a) and/or epode; somotimes the etasian wore in the form of a commureas lyric ode sung in alternate verses by the actors and the chorue. 27

26moulton, pp. 6, 9, 86-88, seren playge pp. x17-x7. 27moulton, pp. 6, 9, 81, 86. Seren plare, pp. xiv-xi.

Although the extant Greek dramas were writton by Ionlc poets, cany of the choral parte in the prologuee and athan were composed in Doric dialect, apparently because of the Dorian origin of the Dionyalac dithyranb. 28 (The Ionic dialect was nore soft and greceful than the rugged Dor1c ©1alect.)

The lyric odes of the chorue (in the prepdos and atand eorvod mochanical, roprocontativo, explanatory, and acothetic funotione for the play. 29

Mechanically they onboded the unitiee of time, place, and action by separating (1n time) the epinotes and by explaining rolevant incidente which could not occur at the given place and/or tine.

From 1ts orlginal position ae protagonlet in the rellglous ceromony, the chorue cane to represent common men-athelr a verage morellty and courage, the noreal state of alnd, public oplalon of the theatre patrone, the audience thinking aloud. The chorus wae in clear contrant to the hero who roprosented an uncommonly great man with ouper human morality, courage, 1deale, ufforing, and thoughte.
${ }^{28}$ gean Deance p. vi11. An Inticoduction. P. 24. Rolnhold, D. 4. Katt, p. 15. *

29fichen Rlare, p. xi11. Eour playn, pp. $1 x-x 1$. An Intarnation. p. 26. MahaffJ. I, 240-42. Moulton, pp. 9, 66-69, 124-26. Ro1nhold, p. 57. Beren Plava p. xiv. Themaplay, p. 9. Watt, p. 15.

As a representative of common man, the chorue wae a bridge between the audience and the stage.

The chorus' odes explained the universel rellgious, morel, and social algnificance of the play'e action and thenel e). Their involved eympathies and comments (despite uninvolved action) expreseed the epirit and nood of the play.

Aesthetlcally the chorus gave the beauty of pootry and dence to the pley. The poetry was epoten, intoned, or aung as solos, duots, or any other possible combination of volces. Occesionally the chorus was accompanied by a single lyre or flute. The dance monements were statuesque, 1altative, and intorprotative.

The ohorue not only provided a lyric element but also toot part in the dramatic dielogue of the epleodes. During such times, they apore with and sometimes adrised the actors. 30

Forensic tredition
The forencic tradition, which flourished in the flfth and fourth conturies B. C., 31 was incorporated into the lator extant plays. The forenelc tradition of judicial procedure 10 Prequently evident in the dielogye in which the hero and

30 Maheffy, I, 240. Moulton, D. 65. Relnhold, p. 57.
31 Mahaffy. II, 160ff. Mheban P1ayn. p. 8.
his opponente dieouse thelr rospective cases with forenelc formallty. 32

## Prognatation of Gcent dcaman

Dramatic prosentation -tructures

Juet as no two theatres of today are exactly allke, $s 0$ no two Greet theatree were identical. And juet as theatre structures of todaj continually are modifled, so thej were in anclent Groece. Howerer, a general pattern of the baslc type of theatres in anciont Greoce can be formulated.

Orghentich.--The largest acting area vae the ofrcular gechentife (some measured ninoty fobt or more in dianotor) In which the chorus did its dancing. 33 Located in the conter of the occhentre was the altar and etatue of Dionseue upon which a cecrifice was lald before the play otarted.

Thentron. -- raciroling and nearly enclosing the orohootra wae the thentron34-as curred bank of audionce eate frequently eet againat the slope of a hill. The seate wore eepereted into concentric etripe by alelee, or dineome.

32moulton, pp. 141-45.
33 Eictenn Piaye. p. x1. An Introduction p. 22. Moulton, p. 127. Roinhold, pp. $57=56^{\circ}$

34elftoen Plare p. x1. Mahaffy, I, 238-39. siogiriod Molchingor, Thenter der gegnoract (Frankfurt. Gormenyi Flocher Buchoro1, 1956\%. p. 19. Ro1nhold, pp. 57-58. seren Plex. P. $x$.

Flights of etope, or kimatese soparated the seate into redge-shaped sections celled rectin Leter, the audience could reach the top of the thenticon, or kollon, by cllmbing a ladder and going through a colonnade. The audience frequently brought cuahlone to elt on, for the seate of ground, atone, or porhape lumber wore hard. The theatres of Greece accommated an audience of from 15,000 to 30,000 . The throne of the priest of Dionyeue wae ideally loceted in the fhertron opposite 1 te open end. Also seated near the prieot were the Judges and other honored apectatore.

Stage.--Opposite the seata of the dignitarles in the opon end of the fhenticon was a otage. 35 Perhaps the atage was at flrst lovel with the occhenfre and a continuation of 1t into the open area between the ende of the thentron, Eventually it becane a loag, narrow, rectangular platform above the ocehertice lovel and connected to it by a flight of etope. This same flight of etope grow to be contlnued under the atage (bolow the level of the orcheotra) for entrances and exita of ghoate and underworld apparitions.

Skene.--Touching the rear of the etage wae the Akene, 36 which served as a dreesing room. The front of the frane

35 pour Playe p. Fil1. Mahaiffy, I, 241-42. Moulton, p. 127. Roinhold, pp. 57-58.
 4 Intropluction pp. 20, 22-23. Manarfy, I, 242-43. Moulton, p. 127. Relahold, pp. 57-58. Watt, 29-30.
touched the etage, gonorally ropresented a toaple, and sorved ae the beckground for the play. (Tragedies wore ueuelly eot near a tomple or palace, comodies on a street.) The nkene facade was orlginally probably a long, low, wooden etructure, but oventually richor bullding metorlale wore used. Lator two storles wore added, sometimes with a platform on the upper etory, or aplacenthn. The lower story came to have three doorss The contor door was used for the entrances and exite of the protegonist, or hero; the stage rlght door wae used for the deuteregonist, or supporter of the protagonist; the stage left door was used for the tritagonist, or opponent of the protagonist. Kescongers frein hoae genorally entered through the stage rlght door, eeseengers from abroad through the stege left door. However, mesengers ade thelr exite through the paced ol, the opohentice level alleje botwoen the atage and thenticon. The paradol wore also used for chorus and apectator entrances and oxits.

Behind the stago--sonotimea at a distance, sometimes forming the ckene-was the temple orected to Dlonyeuc.

Palatad scenecy. - erventually sconery other than the frene front cane to be used. 37 The atudy of the art of econe palnting and perapective was inltiated by the skenographer, Agatharohua; Anaxagores and Domocrltue took up the optical

37Mahaffj, I, 243-44. Moulton, pp. 17, 127. Re1nhold, p. 57.
questiones and in about 400 B. C. Appollodorus, another etenogrepher, perfocted the art. Flanking the etage were two projecting winge, or pametenige which wore ueed to help alter the painted ecenery in two waye: Some pleces of scenery could be drewn back frow the stage and concealed bohind the winge. At the winge were two lofty, triangular priens called cerolverai on each face of the cerolvera wae painted a difforent scene.

Addiflenal equtprent.38-a large curtain wae used to hide any god who would ontor for a deve ex rechying onding (an onding in which a god ontered to untangle the plaj's final action). However, no act curtain mat ueed. A plece of stage machinery, othor than the derrick used to bring in a god, was the ecerclent a platforn on whoele which rolled an interior econe out frow the center skene door onto the etage.

Dramatic procentation coremonles

Cecenoniel competition, --The Oreek plaja were presented at both of two national rellgious festivale-ethe Leman or festival of the wine-press, in January or February and the Grenter or city Dlonyele fostival in March or April. 39 38

Fonc Pinva. p. 1x. An Intreduction. pp. 23-25. Mahaffy, I, 243 . Moulton, p. 127. Re1nhold, p. 58. seren Playk p. xi.

39picteen playe p. $1 x$. Grefr Drame pp. 111-1v. An Introduction. p. 20. Mahaffy, I, 247. Moulton, p. 7. Ro1nhold, pp. 57-58. seren Pleke, pp. xi-xl11. Theban Playe, p. 9.

The Lemeon was a rural fostival of lessor 1mportanoe and often served as a trlal ground where the playe could be takon "on the road."

The clty flomyin festival lasted for six days: On the flrat day an lage of the god Dlonyeue wae taken by coremonial prooescion into the country for foasting and merrlment; that evening he was brought back in a torch light parade and placed In the theatre orcheoters. On the second day, the flret compotition was held; this compotition was among ton dithyranble choruses of flfty nen each. On the third day, the eecond com-pet1tion--among five comedles--vae held. A tetralogy (three tragedies and a satyr drama) vae prosented on sach of the three remaning days. Each day a eacrlfice mas placed on the altar of Dlonyeus before the playe began.

Furlag the Eoloponnesian War ( 431 B. C. to 404 B. C.). the coremony wae changed fron elx to 11 ve days. The echedule for the flrst two days remained the sane; the last three daye -ach had a totralogy in the morning plue two comedies on the afternoon of the third and fourth daye and one comedy on the afternoon of the flfth day.

The totrelogies of the three oonpoting playwrighte were eeleoted to compete by a prior conteat of numerous entries. The seripts wore judged durlag the dionyala fostlval by flve nen who were chosen by lot. Prlzes wore awarded to the winning poot; protagonist; and chocegus or wealthy eponeor.

The chocegun was a private citizen who elther volunteered or was chosen by lot to bear the cost of staging the play and supplyiag and training the chorus. The atate paid the actora.

Gecemondilupport.-oDuring the ore of the Clity Dionmal foetivale, the arts flourlshod and receivod much public and etato support. 40 The foetival 1 tself wae prow duood bj the otato (as a corenony of tho otato roligion) at a public theatre. Originally the admiselon wae frees leter, the etate leased the theatro to an individual citieon Who could charge two obole (a nowinal fee) for 1 te upkeep. If any opectator oould show legitimate noed, the stato would refund hie two obole.

Becauce music and dram had permeated tho domentlc and compan life of $\Delta$ thens, the audience was generally brilliant, 11701y, and orltical. 41 aele cltizons could attend, and agood chare of the voting popilation did. Women, boys, and bettor educated sleves could attend the tragedlesi women could not attend the comedlee. seats were roserved for magiatrates, dignttarioe, and prionto.

[^7]Dramatic ppicontation performore ${ }^{41}$

Pecsonnel.--The actors in the anclent Greck dramas wore probably not ohosen by lot but rather eoal-peraanontly attachod to the playwright in sone way. They wore trained in declamation so that thelr volces would cerry to all apectators gestures and movemente wore large, alaple, and lapreaalve for the eaze reason.

Gontumpe-The costumes of the actore ovolvod from the traditional drese of the Bacchlc festivale and gradually became more and more 1 mitative of the apeclflo characters. Howerer, oostanes rotalized thoir allegorical elgniflcance, dignlty of proportions, and Bacchlc brilliance and never becane hlstorloally correct. the large slef of the costumes frequently required padding for the actors.

Manta and ylen. - The actore and chorus all wore aacke and mige, each deslgned for a epeciflo tron of person--king, prlest, sleve, and $s 0$ on. The maske had the advantages not only of boing vielble for a greater distanoe than the aotors' foatures, but also of onabling any actor to play eoveral parte and/or to play the part of a woman. (All actors and ohorue mombers wore moni thle perhaps accounts for the somowhat nescullne women in Greet tragedies,
${ }^{41}$ Helena Chalmors, Clother on and off the Stinge (Row York: D. Apploton and Company, 1928 ). P. 56. E1天109 Play p. x11. Ean playe p. 1x. Nn Introduction p. 25. Mahaffy, I. 245-46. Moulton, pp. 16, 127-129. Relnhold, p. 57. Seren Elavb, p. x111. Matt, p. 30

Eopinenc. --The aotors only (not the chorue nombers) wore ethlct shoe, or cothunnus, to increase their helght. Spociflc Undoratanding of gedigun Rex
geatpun Rex 10 one apeciflo exanple of Greek tragedy. 42 The play was writton by Sophocles in the laot thind of the flfth contury during the holght of his powors.

The plgures are taken from a cyole of legend conoornIng the Theban rojal house. gadipue fer can form the firet play in the following continued narrative about the Theban rojalty O O.dimin Rex, Ondipun it colonus. Antioone However. Oadipun Res was not writton ee one play in the tragic trilogy of a Groek totralogy in thie sorlen. Sophocles wrote Antigone Sirat, Ondipun Bex some dozen yoars lator at hib zonith, and
 undt in itsolf.
gedipun kex 10 structured with a prologue, preadone
 carefully allowing codipue to gradually become avare of who he 1s and what he hae done. H1e avareness in accomplishod, however, with dramatic 1rony, for at no point does Oodipue know as much as the audience.

Faultlese technical development, etrong dramatic 1 rony, a truly tragic herc conatitute three of the many reasona why

[^8]Arlatotle used ondpul Rex, wore than any othor drama, to oxomplify hie orltioal theorlee.

Qadlour ian 10 frequently called a tragedy of fate, but Oodipus' fallure to plead 1gnorance of h1e acto and his accoptance of morel reaponalbillty for them indlcate a more univereal etruggle of mantind.

The epeolfic production of Oedfpue Res at south Datota State College Theatre on May 22 and 23, 1958 was ftequently modifled or clarlfied bj an underetanding of Greek drama. Further reforence will be made to th1e chaptor when ecrlpt requiromente for the technical deslgne are discussed.

## CHMPTPZ ITI

## DFTREMTKINO THA APPROACH

TABLE OF COMTENTS FOR CHAPTER III

Part 1. General Considerations
In $\Delta$ pproach Dotormination
The director a intorprotor . . . . . . . . . . . 59
The director a coordingtor . . . . . . . . . . . 59

Part 2. Approach Dotoraination Conslderetiona Applied to Qedipus fer

The director' approach . . . . . . . . . . . . 60

## BODY FOR CHAPTIR III

## Gonoral Conaldorations in Approach Determination

## The dicector at interocetar

The task of traneforming a ploce of drametic litoraturo Into a drametic prosentation 1108 with the director 1n oducatlonal thoatro. Tho exocution of that traneformation chould te In acoord with the author' basic thome and Ideas, but the director 1 e responsible for determining the perticular interorotation which will create tho offoct and values eot by the author. Consequontly, it is the director (not the author) who 1. responelble for the Inlshed product in thoatro.

As 1ntorprotor, the dirootor muet dotornine the type of troatmont for a givon play, lte dramatic and tochnical etyles, the acting etJle, and tho orerall productional approach.

## The olvapor n ooprdimpor?

Thoatre is a compoelto art in which the varloue oloments muet bo unitod to serve togethor ae hamonlous and artietic whole. Tholr unlty domande a coordinated approach in accord with the diroctor' 1 nterprotation. Coneequontly, the director must corve as tho basic coordinator and designor of the entire production. Ho muat adjust the tochnical onphane to
${ }^{1}$ Dolman, p. 2. Frioderich, p. 32. Gasener, pp. 70, 185, 202, 211, 219-21, 272, 275-80, Heffner, pp. 87-88, 94.
${ }^{2}$ Dolman, pp. 57-58. Friederich, pp. 31-32. Gasener. pp. 1, 211-12, 223, 273-74, 293. Heffner, pp. 5, 7-9. 30.
his Interpretation through the use of line, color, mase, and design princlples. Ideally, he ahould be a cepable orgenlser thoroughly famlller with all aspocts of the theatre.

As coordinator, the director muct insure unity of production in accord with hle epproach.

## -pproach Dotormination Consideratione appliod to cadron bex

## The dimentor's goperach

The director for gadibun Bex explained the balc prom ductional conalderatione to be met in hie interpratation of the ecrlpt. Abeach technicel dealgo progreseed, additionel conelderations and plane were diecalesed and approved by him. ${ }^{3}$ The initial besic conelderations included the following:

1. The claenicel nature of the play would be deemphaalsod somphat.
2. There would be no atteapt at realits in eet, costumee, or llgbtlag.
3. The rellglous nature of the play would be deomphae -1sod.
4. The cot should be huce, reat, elaple, have numoroue levele for blocking of chorue movemente, and appear somewhat Greclen.
5. The contumes ahould be Naple and appear aonewhat Greclani no cothums would be worn.
$3_{\text {Following, pp. } 91-92,148-49, ~ 190-92, ~ 246-47, ~ 263, ~ 280-81 . ~}^{\text {. }}$

## 6. The lighting should be falrly intence.

7. Ro mesk would be ueed; makoup ahould be naskllke and styllsed, less eo for the royalty.
8. The colors ohould be predominantly cool.
GHAPTER IV
DESTOMTMG AKR EXKCUTHO THE BRT
TABLE OF COMTENTS FOR CHAPTRR IV
Part 1. General Conolderationa in Set Dealgn
Styles of set dealgne
TJpes of eote
Elesonte of deslgn
Line in deelgn ..... 65
Reallst1o linoExpressive 11neDecorative line
Color in dealgn ..... 70
Color definitionColor harmonyColor exprocelvenose
Mase in design ..... 73
Roallatlc masExpresilve maseDocorative maseNegative mese
Principles of deslen
Ualts ..... 77
Varletj ..... 78
Emphasie, or contrast ..... 78
Balance ..... 78
Rhytha, or continuity ..... 78
Proportion ..... 79
Grace ..... 79

Producing a set design

$$
\text { Informetlon requirod . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . } 79
$$

anelo requiremente Script requimants D1rector's requiremente Other teohnl cal doal gen requirenente Equipeent requirenente
Graphic recording of a set doolgn ..... 85
Floor plan
ExetcherElovation and worting drawingeModel
Exeoutlon of a eot dealgn ..... 88
conctruationPalntingMounting
Part 2. Set Considerations applied to gadloun fiex
Information required for the cot dealen
Seript requirenente ..... 91
Director' requiroments ..... 91
Other technical deelgn requiremente ..... 92
Equipment requiroments ..... 93
8tege 12:081 ght 11 nes
Page
Oraphic recording of the at dealgn
Producing the design ..... 99
Doalgang the altar unit
Deolgning the palace door unitApproving the destenDraving the floor planConetructing the nodelDesigning the painting
Fiecording the dealgn ..... 112
Executing the sot dealgn
Conatruction and aseonbling roquirononts ..... 112
Palace door unit requiremonte
altar unit requiremonts
an drep and treo requiromente
Purohaing roquiromontsYort echedule requiresonte
Mounting the ehow. ..... 124
setting atege
Palnting the eot
Bot rohearcal
Other technical rohearsale
Drese reheareal
Porformanoe

## BODY FOR CHAPTER IV

Goneral Considerations in Bot Design

## Btile of Mt demag

and

## Tpen of Mts

sconlc atyles (and tjpes) are frequently used in conblmation with on another, and none 1 a alwaye clearly differontlatod from all othore. The labol applied to a givon set by difforont poople nay diffor, but what 1 s 1aportant 1 e that the persons designing the production know what the set will look like and wat inpreselon it wall givo.

Chapter I, soleoting the Script, includes a discuesion of the styles and tjpes of cet design.l Consequently, only a brief tabular liating of each 1s included here in Tables 2 and 3.

## Elamper of dendan

The elonents which exprese a deelgn are line, color, and masc. ${ }^{2}$

## Line 1n design

Ranlintio 2lm.--In nature there are boundarles or outer deacriptions botwoon aroas. In doalgn, boundary 1a communicated by the use of IInes to dellngate form. ${ }^{3}$
${ }^{1}$ above. pp. 15-19. 2Frieder1ch. pp. 88-123. Hefiner. p. 154.

3Dolana, pp. 51-52. Friederich. p. 89. Gasenor. p. 318.

3nbt 2
8TMES OF 8Et DESTOH

|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Copleo } \\ & \text { recilty } \end{aligned}$ | But reduces 1t to 1 ts chence | And modifles the essence |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Attempted reslls. | Vaturallsa | Ies, vith real objecte | 駘 | No |
|  | Realisa | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Yes, with } \\ & \text { btage objeote } \end{aligned}$ | No | No |
| Kod1s1ed resilsm | S1aplif1ed rocllem, or cymbollea | Yee | ```Y0n, and ro- cords the essonce 1n detall``` | P3o |
|  | Iapreselonisim | Yee | Ies | Yes, by recoraing only the basic Une(o) end/or mano (eol of the essence |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Sori- } \\ & \text { re4igen } \end{aligned}$ | Styl1ea | Yeb | Y ${ }^{\text {d }}$ | KOB, by exapgeration in acoord with the deelgnerif understanding of the ecript |
|  | Expreseioni es | Yes | Yee | Ies, bj exaggepation in eccord with the contral charsctor': calnd |
|  | Theatricallen | Yee | May or mey not, but doee not osmonilage the fact thet it 1 s stage scenery |  |
|  | conotruction1ba | Yes | Yes | Yoe, by including only the utliltarian baelc structure |
|  | Poreallsu | No. presente meroly an acting area |  |  |

## TABLE 3

TYPES OF BETS

| Shifting set | Unit set | Rearranged flats, plastie pieces, and stage properties |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Permanent basic structure with altered decoration |
|  |  | Reversible set |
|  |  | Sereen set |
|  | Curtain set | With stage properties |
|  |  | W1th cut-down scenery |
|  | Books set |  |
|  | Prism set |  |
|  | Tracks | * |
|  | Wagons |  |
|  | D1ses |  |
|  | Revolving stage |  |
|  | Flown set | Drops |
|  |  | Serlms |
|  |  | Flats |
|  |  | Other |
| Permanent set | $\begin{aligned} & \text { One locale } \\ & \text { set } \end{aligned}$ | * |
|  | Multiple <br> locale set |  |
|  | Light set |  |

Erpenente din.--LIne also hae expreselve, or eymbollo, dellneation taken from ahapee in nature. "From the dewn of man's avaronese, cortain rocurring linoe have had the capaoity to express foellnge." 5

Streight lines connote etrongth, hardness, austority, and in people are assoclated with adolescente or the vory olds curved lines connote softness, grace, galety, somotimes age (wom by wear) and in people are aesociated with the very young or fat, alddle agod poople.

Heaty, jagged lines (as in a rugged mountain top) connote enduring strength, violence, energy, excitement, anger.

Vorticle lines (as in tall trean, mountaine, and colunns) connote majeety, strength, dignity and (as in hoight and the heavene) connote inepiration, reverence, exalted enotion.

Horisontal lines (as in aky and sea) connote atabllity, cerenity, repose, plaoldity, or oven monotony and (ae in hute, oaves, and tombe) connote oppreselon, poverty, earthlnees.

Diagonal lines (uncomion in nature, seon in lightning and falling and other diotorted objeote) have groat attention velue and oonnote dietortion, unreleased tencion, power and foroe, inatabllity, vehomonce, the dynanic and dramatic.

Linee bending downard (as in weeping wlllowe, bowed old persone, and withered plante) connote sorrow, depreseion, negation.

4Dolman, p. 70. Frioderlgh, pp. 89-97. Gasenor, pp. 400-401. 5Friederich, p. 90.

Heary, ourved lines connote pomp, luxury, elegance. Llght, vevy, bllioue linee connote fun, joy, lightnees. Faot lines are atralght or only ellghtly ourved lines which pernit the eje to move exiftlyi elow linee are broken and interrupt the eje's movement.

Croseed lines connote conflict, especially if they ere oroseed diagonally.

It muet be remeabered that a eot cannot be dealgned only with a conolderation of the eymbolic nature of lines; the period in hietory, the line of the object(e) in reallty, other dealgn elemente, and/or dealgn principles (notably varlety) a ay alter the use of line ejnbolige. But, although it is unwiee to utilize line eymboliem without making other neceesery conelderations, it 1e equally unwlee not to utllize line eynbollea if it will aleo neot the other requiresente of the eet deelgn. 6

Deoocitile dra.--Dreselng the eot with drapories, atage properties, contumes, and so on chould also be done with oareful conelderation of 11 ne .7

In the use of lines, it is of vital 1mportance to achiove unity with varloty. Such an achiovement will neoeeearlly vary with each eet deelgn, but oome general conelderatione can uaually be applied to any set. ${ }^{5}$ (1) Uac a limited number of kinde of lines and a limited extreac varlation of the chosen

6Frlederioh, p. 92. 7yple., pp. 97-99. 8jpld.. pp. 99-100.

Finde of lines (for unlty). (2) Gonorally uee more than one Find of line (for varletj). (3) Heve a prodonisant kind of line used roughly sixts percent of the time or more (for unitj). (4) If realien limita line variety in est dosign, achleve line varioty in cot dreseing.

## Color In design

coloc definlition,--Color conelate of three charactor 10t1ce--hue saturation, or intenelty; and value. 9

Hue 1e the gellownese, bluonese, rednese of color.
Saturation, or intonalty, rofors to the purity of a color, the emount of complementary hue in ite compoaition. Mixing a hue with ite complement will graj it. Pure complemontary pigmonte will produce noutral graj in a given mixed proportion but palnt plgment hues and purities eometlmes varj thie general rule.

Value 1: that charactoriotic of color which amea a hue very from nearly ae light ae white (pale pink) to nearly as dark ae black (rod-black). The valuo of a hue oan be altored by alxing black or white with it to produce a shade or a tint reepectively.

[^9]Color mamonr. 10--To ut1l1ze color haraony, one nuet understand the relationehlp among colors.

The three primary plgaont hues--red, yollow, and blue-can be alxed to produce anj other plgment hue. The three eecondary plgment hues-orange, green, and purple-are produced by mixing two primarles--red and yollow, yollow and blue, and blue and red respectivoly. Color huee can be thought of a. ljing on the clroumference of a olrcle-ered, orange, jellow, greon, blue, purple, red. Between each primary and secondary hue 1 : a tortiary hue--red, red-orange, orange, yellow-orange, yellow, yellow-green, green, blue-green, blue, blue-purple, purple, rod-purple, rod. Botwoon ary two of the above hues are varioue gredatione of hues running fron oze hue into the next.

Hues opposite one another on the wheel are complementary hues--rod and groen, blue and orange, yollow and purple, and so on. Hues adjacent to one another are analogous hues. Varlous values of the same hue are monochromatic colors.

Complementery color harmony.--Complemontary colore are harmonious if (1) eoparated by noutral colora (greye or earth oolora), (2) subdued in intenelty, or (3) of very unequal proportions.

Split conplementary harmony. - Instead of balancing one color by ueling lit complementary color, one can balance a
${ }^{10}$ Dolman, pp. 345-47. Frieder1ch, pp. 104-108, 111-12. Gasener, pp. 404-407. Hoffner, pp. 298-99.
oolor by uelng two colors equally dietant from the complement. For example, 1 netead of belancing blue with 1 te complement orange, blue can be balanced with red-orange and yellow-orange.

Triad color haraony.--If apllt conplementarles are -qually dietent from one enother and from the besic color (as red, yellow, and blue are), the harmony 1 a known as triad harm monj. Such a coabination easily becomes violent, and the triads muet be used in extrenely unequal propertions.

Asalogous color harmony.--Hues adjacont on the color wheol may be used in combination (1) without intermediate noutrale and (2) in falrly full intencitios.

Monochromatic color harmony.--Succeselve values of the same hue can be ueed together eaelly. The primary disadvantage in monochromatic color harmony is lack of contrast and expreselvenese.

General color harnony.--The larger the surface areas, the lower the intenclites ohould be. Small areas of bright color can balance large areas of neutrel color. Neutrale can be used together in any combination, but are dull unleos brightor colors are ueed with then. Noarly any colors of high intonclty clash nearly all pastols harmonize. Lover values have greater wolght and dignity than higher values.
color exprenel Tener, - The goneral expreselvenese of a color depende upon 1te relative lightnese and warmnese. 11

11 Wayne Boman, Modeca Thentrelhehting (Now Yort: Harper \& Brothers, 1957), pp. 94-95. Frlederloh, p. 109. Heffner, p. 298.

Relative lightness 18 determined by a colop' value; relative warmese 1 is determined by 1 te aymbollc nature. Greon, blue, and purple by acsociation with the ocean, sky, grass, and ice are cool colorsi red, orange, and yellow by association with flre and the sun are warm colora. A light, warm-colored eetting (whether by peint, lighing, or both) connotes comedy; a dark, cool-colored setting connotes tragedy. Anj combination of deri-wara, dart-cool, light-wara, or light-cool may be used. Howevor, dark, light, cool, or warm ohould predominate for unlty, eaphasie, and good proportion.

In addition to ite general expressivenese each color has unique aybbollc connotatione teken from nature. 12 color oymbollsm can be expreselve, clear, and beautiful or it can beoome so involved thet it is relatively unclear and confueing. Some of the genorally accopted eyabollc algnifioanoes of color are llated in Table 4.

## Maee in dealgn

Renllatio man. 13--In reallty, maes can be gonerally olaselfled ae blomorphic (free form; chaped lite living plante and animals) and geometric (cubes, oylinders, pyramide, cones, and other geometrio sollds).
${ }^{12}$ Bowan, pp. 92, 94-95. Dolman, pp. 345-47. Frlodorloh. pp. 109-11.

13Dolman, pp. 51-52. Friederifich, pp. 115-16.

## TAl32 4

## COLOR SMBOLI $3 M$

| colorn | 87-bol1 20 | From nature |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Bet. } \\ & \text { Blue } \end{aligned}$ | stabllity, flrmese, oplritual peace, truth, dignity, intelligonce, modesty, conetancy, quietness, coldness, lack of ejmpathy, succese | Sky, 0ea, 100, and heorene |
| Oocat. Groon | Decay, envy, jealouey, calw, reat | Decayed vegitation |
| 82t. Groen | Growth, Fltallty, youth, hoalth, hope, epringtime, inopiretion, oternity | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Qrowlng } \\ & \text { regl tati on } \end{aligned}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Uncat. } \\ & \text { Yellow } \end{aligned}$ | Decay, decelt, jealouny, inconetancy | Decayed regitation |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { set. } \\ & \text { Yoliow } \end{aligned}$ | Harrent, frultfulnese, wealth, hope, warmth, gayety, joy, love, goldi, royalty, power, dientity | Sun, r1re, rlpo greln |
| 8t. Orange | Paealon, vitallty, alld unreat, domestiolty | Sun, f1ro, harvest |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Rat. } \\ & \operatorname{Rod} \end{aligned}$ | Wargth, oxcltomont, ardont zeal, par--lonate love, cruelts, murder, gullt, ohame, hatrad | Sun, flre, blood |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Rode } \\ & \text { IO olet } \end{aligned}$ | Rojalty, dignity, colomity, victory, martyred truth | anciont royal cloth |
| Malto | Coldmes, winter, chaotity, purlty, lanocence, Vlrgine, ghoote, angele, priente, calnte, deltios | 100, onow. cleanlinese |
| Black | Death, nourning, widowhood, deapalr, deprocilon, myitery, maglc, oln, witchoraft, matan, monks, nune | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Mght, } \\ & \text { cavee, } \\ & \text { tombe } \end{aligned}$ |
| Clear Brown | Harthiness and simplicity | Earth |
| DIngy <br> Brown | Plith, famine, poverty, degradation | Serrdor |

asat. weans satureted; Unsat. means uncaturated.

In eote, blomorphic forme are moot frequently used in fumiture, mountaine, roote, trees, and so on Because of thelr difflcult conotruction, they are generally lialted in a sot dealgn or ueed in twodimenalonal form with the third dimenelon painted on.

Geonotrlc masces predominate in set dealgn, for they are more common in reallty and more eadly reproduced.

Expennive man,-othe epparent welght and/or elze of sase is one of ite greatest expresive elemente, but it has other sybollc delincations elmilar to those of innee. 14

Curved mas connotes grace, femininity, rhythm.
Cublo mase connotee welght, frength, tyranny, power, otabllity.

Slabe of mass are lighter and faster than cubes and are comparable to linee in oymbollc connotation.

Dlagonally tilted maes carries the eame connotations at diagonal lines.

Mess may be given additional exproselvonese by 1te placement on the otage, for otage areas (all other thinge belng equal) heve expreselve connotatione, too. 15

Down center 10 the etrongest atage aroa and 10 1deal for oonfllct and clleax.
${ }^{14}$ Friederlch, pp. 116-21.
15Ipld., pp. 36-37. Heffner, p. 100.

Up etage conter 10 the eooond etrongeat stage area and may be used to remore the oonfllot somowhat or to dieplay authority or regallty.

Down etage right 1 e the warmeet and nost informel otage area and 10 useful for the warmest scones.

Down stage loft 1 e more cool and removed and 1 s useful for intellectual conflict, buelnese dealings, and oo on.

Up etage right by boing more renoved then down right 1. ueeful for nore formal and restrained emotions.

Op etage left 1s the most distent epot on the otage and 1e frequently used for the appearance of eupernatural or myatical boinge.

It aust be romonbered that exprosalvo use of mase is not the only conelderation in scene dealgn, but, if it coor dinatee with other dealgn conelderatione, it can be most effec-t1-0. 16

Deoorethle mas.17--Tho decorative use of maes iv integrally a part of 1 te expreselve use. Reallty frequently lim1te the use of naee for expreselve and decorative purposes.

Mesatile anc.18--The oppoal to of maes 10 apace, and conctimes an effect (particularly a grand and expanalve one) 1s created DJ lack of mase. If a eot is obviously in need of dealen 1 mprorement, ellaination of some elemente (e) rather
${ }^{16}$ Friedorich, p. 36. - 77 Ibld.. pp. 121-22. 181p2d. pp. 119-21.
than addition of nore will frequently correot the obvious 1apropriety in design.

Unity with variety 1 e of great 1mportance in the use of mase, too. 19 (1) Use a 11 ml ted number of kinds of mase and a limited number of reriatione of one kind (for unity). Use at least two almilar forme (for varlety). (3) Have one dominant form (for unity). (Remember that atage props are an 1aportant and integral part of the set masees.)

## Bxincidenen ar dentm

. The purpose of the cet deaign is to enhance the play by helping eroate the right mood and eotting: 20 thie includes oonoeallng what should not be ceen, decorating, suggesting or portrajing reallty, and (of greatest inportance) adding to the enotional and thematic content of the play. A eet achleres 1te purpose by utilization of the design elemente in accordance with the princlples of dealgn--unity, variety, emphasie, balance, rhythe, proportion, and grace. 21

Unity
Learning, underatanding, interest, and pleasure all depend upon unity. In a eet dealgn, unity muet conter around

## 19101d pp. 122-23.

20Dolman, pp. 292-94. Gacener, pp. 99-102, 227, 318. Heffner, pp. 209-12.

21 Dolman, pp. 54-72. Friederich, pp. 99-100, 112-14, 122-35. Gasener, pp. 103-104, 318-20. Hoffner, pp. 154-59, 310-11.
the content and meaning of the plaj and must be reflected in the line, oolor, and mas of the eet dealgn.

Varlety
Unity alone will not rotain interest; there must be varled and new faotors, too. However, new factore muat be related in a oubordinate was to the unity.

Faphasia, or contrast
The factors, ldeas, or moods which should be predoninant in the play and ent nuct be superordinated over those of leaser 1aportance.

## Belance

Blayanotrioal dealgn in which one olde of the stage Elprore the other side is ueeful only for formal, austere, or artificial plaje. However, aejmetrical, or informal, balance 1- eceontlal for anj other play. To achlove balance in a eot dealgn, one muet oonsider line, color, mase, and stage lightIng elwultaneously, for good balence in one elesent can be oompletelj deatrojed by 1abelance in another.

Rhytha, or continuity
8ome reour rance of pattern 10 neceseary in set dealgn to ineure unity. Monotonoue repeate (such ae office windows) provide unity but not variety. Progreselve repeate or scattered repeats provide unity with eone variety. Generally at leaet two
reourring patterne should be used in a set, but their proportions ehould not be equel.

Proportion
It $1 \in \mathrm{coldow}$ wlec to use equal proportions of two factore unlese oonfllct 10 desired. Rowever, nearly any proportione of factore naj be used in a composite design if they are caresully integrated into a unifled pattorn. Porhaps the most pleading proportion 1s the golden section, roughly a ratio of thirtj-oleht to alxty-two, which was used by the anclont Grooke and has for a long time boen conolderod by many dosigners as the nost beautiful purely abstract proportion.

## Grace

Grace does not 1mply a lack of strongth but rather a lack of mleapplied or $m 1$ edireoted offort.

## Produedrg a mit deatero

## Information required

Beric requicementr.e-It would be humanly 1mposalble to have complote comsand over the utillzation of dealgn olomente and principles in suoh a way as to produce a given eot which would comvey a given play most clearly to the greatest number of the given audionce. The great plastiolty of the aesthetic values of dealgn and the innumerable variables in eot dealgning
cate designing a sot one of the most uncortain fas woll as most chellenging, ever new, and instructive) theatre task. 22

Howerer, one oan attompt to lay a stroag basic knowledge in eot design by serious study of doeign in the arts-e lltereture, drama, muelc, art, dance, sculpture, and so on; by etudy of groat worke of art; by collection (both in the mind and in ecrap books) of numerous kinde of constructed and natural objeots; by actual cot dosigning for a varioty of play otyles in a variety of sconio etyles and types; by construction and painting of eetaj and by living with perceptual avarenese of the deelgn and beauty throughout any onvironment. 23

Sospt moquicnente.--Erom the ecript the dealgner learne how to formulate hie design in accord with four basic consider ations. ${ }^{24}$

1. The oxtornal world of the play--the yoar, the place, the season, the time of day, the specific building or outdoor looation-owlll be projected largely by the eot. The external world nay be of vital lmportance to the play or $1 t$ may be largely undefined and unimportant.
2. The people in the play-othelr tastes, prejudices, talente, stature, intereste, and thelr personality ae determined

22Priederich, pp. 1-3.
23Dolman, p. 48. Friederich, pp. 1-245. Gaeaner, p. 311. Heffner, p. 153.

24 Priederlch, pp. 25-30, 75-77. Gasener, pp. 227, 301-304, 311-12.
by their total environmental and heraditary oonditioning-can be effectively and carefully defined by the eet.

Underatanding of the external world and/or the people nay require careful and accurate research by the set dosigner.
3. Projection of a play's theme and mood by set design cay be difflcult, but it 10 of laportance in any play and oital in pluya which are writton in the etyle of ayabollam or expresol onlen.
4. $\Delta c t i o n ~ r e q u i r e m e n t e-\infty d o o r e, ~ w i n d o w a, ~ t e l e p h o n e s, ~$ bookcases, and ao on--nust be integrated in the desien.

E1cectoc' mines the mood and atyle of the plaz as woll aa the sconlc deelgn etyle and perhapa type of eet. 25 The set must follor very cloaely the direotor'e demande regarding etyle and blocking of novesent and must be accepted by hia before construction plane progrees.

Other teothical dendgn cequicomente.--In ordor to have the noet unlpled and clear production peselble, all technical areas muat be integrated to coordinate with the productional mood and atyle. 26 This requirea joint technical meetinge as woll as technical meotinge with the director.

If lighting 10 of predominant importance in a show, the aot will nocesaarlly be modifled in acoord with the prior

[^10]cosign of the llghting. Occasionally, costume are of predomanant techalical 1mportance and largely determine the set Qoelgn. And quite frequently the set 1 e of predominant importance in the technical dealening. However, there auet be olose cooperation and integration among all productional workers and work regardlese of the time order and predominance in the technicel dealgre.

Sot colors aust be carefully integrated with costume, prop, and light colors. The pigment colors of the sot are celeotively reflective-othey reflect only light reys corresponding to thelr color and absorb all othera. Consequently. color in the set is onrlched by the aare color in light and 1s dulled by its complementery, tinte in 11 ght color have lese offoct upon the plgaont than do saturated hues, and saturated sot colore noed atronger illmination than tinte. Only actual work with and teating of cet and light oolore will onable one to know the eotivity of plgment colors under stage lighting. 27

Fioulpmant caouirament, $=-8$ at dealgn must take into oonelderation the three relatively inflexible phyelcal factors of stage elre, elght lines, and ahlfting facilitios. ${ }^{28}$

27 Bowman, pp. 99-101. Corson, pp. 26-32. Dolman, pp. 342-45. Frlederlch, pp. 54-55. Gaesuer, pp. 113. 786. Heffner, pp. 367, 369-72.

28Frlederl ch, pp. 41-45, 49-54, 56-59. Gaesner, pp. 94, 316-18, 413. Herfzer, pp. 154, 229.

Stage 1zo.--Soldor is a stage too large; if 1t is, tho sot can quito easily redoifine 1ts linita. Ofton atage 1s too small and incroasing 1 ts limits may be noarly 1mposa1blo. Tho atage can bo made to appaar larger by using I1ght colors on the well surfaces, large deep windows, small sur niture of 11 ght color and welght, clear undecorated wall opaces, and so on. Or the floor space can sometimes actually be increased by extending the apron. Ihere are, hovever, great 11mitatione as to what can be done to increase the nize of a etage.

Sight inee.- If the longth of run and average audience 0180 make it possible, the seats in jhe house whoh greatly 11alt or affoct sight linos can bo loft unsold.

Sh1fting facilities.--Limitationa in flying space or other chifting facllitles and room can sometlmes be counteracted by the tjpe of set.

Other equipeont oonsideratlone for the set designer are avallablilts of the atage, constructod sot pleces, lator and time, tools and matoriale, lighting facilitioe, and budget. 29 Stage arallebllity.-oIf the stage 1s utillzod for many and varied purposes (as 1s Proquontly. tho case in educational theatre). 1t may be neceseary to design a set that can be nounted in a lialtod tlee (one day or leea).

29Friederich, pp. 54-56. Gasciér. pp. 107. 335-38.

Constructed set pleces avallable.--Most theatres have (and continuelly add to) a supply of flate and plastic plecees-e ateps, platforme, coluans, and so on. The number and kind of eet pleces avallable et agiven time mej greatly affect the design.

Time and labor avallable.--The number, experlence, and abllity of etage hande avallable 1e a direct factor in eet deelgn and execution. Lialted labor and/or time neoesbarily 11alts the amount of construction, painting, and so on that can be done in executing the eet.

Tools and materials avallable.--If the tools and materlals for a given construction are not or cannot be made avallable, that construction cannot be used.
lighting faclllties.--Although lighting facllition are the direct ooncern of the light designer, they muet aleo be consldered by the eet deelgner, for thej are of 7 tel laportance in projecting the eot. "compeneate for inadequate $11 \mathrm{ght-}$ ing equipment with detalled reallen of dealgn and execution, and attempt elmpliflcation of setting only when the lighting 1s able to bear more than flfty per cent of the burden of the offect." 30

Budget avallable.--If the budget 10 emall, the set may be llmited to reuse of avallable materlale and/or for and inexpensive new additione.

[^11]Graphic recording of a eot dealgn
Because the eet provides the phyalcal boundaries and ofton a major portion of a plaj' oxtomal onvironment, it 10 1aportant that 1 te olze, color, line, and mace be readily known to the director, cast, and technical designers and creve. There are eeveral waje to graphically record a eet--floor plen, eketches, elevation drawings, and model. The given tjpe of set will help detersine the waye which will best communicate the dealgn to the menbers of the production. 31

Whor plap.--One graphic record that 1e essential for any show is the floor plane-a top viow of the stagohouse showing utllisation of floor epace. 32 floor plan will reveal whother there is aufflcient apace on and off etage, whether elght lines have been violated, whether the eet is self coneletent (logical rolationehip of outer and inner walle, furniture placesent, and so on), whother there $1=$ varioty and belance in the stage lialts, whether the eet londe lteelf to the blocking of the production, and whether the eet ie feasible for other technical work like lighting.

The floor plan any be the initial stop in actual deoignIng of the eot if the stage 10 of a enall or irregular shape or if the dealger can more easlly uee euch an approach.
$3^{31}$ 1DNQ. . P. 78
32 1D/Q., pp. 78-88. Gacenor:- pp. 106, 310, 312-16. Heffner, pp. 95, 302, 304.

Skethanf. 33--On the other hand, if the dealgnor prefore, ho aey otart hie work by eketching poselble designe. (Helther way of beginniag a dealgn $1=$ better than the other. The cholce 1e necesearily eubjectively dependent upon the dealgner. ${ }^{34}$ )

A aketoh plotures the eot an it would appear from an 1deal coat in the auditorium. It may be in water cclor, charcoal, colored chalk, colored penclle, ink, or pencll; the cholce 10 a subjective one belongling to the dealgner. 35

The aketoh reveale the quallty of the deelgn-elte unity, varlety, emphasie, balance, rhythe, proportion, and grece es achlered by line, mase, and color. (Regardleas of the tjpe of eretch, color muet be added to it at eone point of the deelgn.) froa the completed sketch, one w1ll leara whether the mood, these, and external world of the play have been captured with accurecy. The color in the eketoh wlll be additionally holpful for the costume and light deagnere ae a check upon color integration in the technical dealgne.

Elayation and yocting deaving $3^{66}--$ An olevation drewing showe the set walle or other plecee in accurate scale without perspective as viewed from the front, side, and/or beok.

33rrlederlch, pp. 88, 136-54. Gasener, pp. 307. 310, 312-16. Heffner, pp. 302-304.

34 rrlederlch, p. 77. ${ }^{35}$ Ib1d., p. 88.
36 Frlederlch, Pp. 155-64, 168-70. Gasoner, pp. 106. 312-16, 683-86.

Front elevations are useful in dealgn (indicative of color, ilne, and mes in accurete detail) and working drewinge (clearly indicative of atze and dealgn). Side and back drawinge are eapecially ueoful as working dravinge and indicate eeesurements, built-on or built-in units (in elde elevetione), oonetruction dotalle, hardware location, and epecial flying or aseenbling instructions or additions. From working drawinge, the necessery meteriels, es well as the conetruction detalle, can be aecortalned.

Sonetines elevation-working dravings are not oufficient for the conatruction inatrsctione and additional cross sectional drawings, detall drawings, and/or 1 sometric drawings (three dimencional, unperapective drawinge with parallel lines paral101 and not ultientely converging) muet be made sleo. 37 Model. 38-a nodel lay or may not be a part of the deelgner'e record. If it la used, it will ofton subetitute for one or $\quad$ ore of the other dealgn etope--the eketoh and/or the -levation drawinge. It nay, however, be built in addition to the other eteps ae en added check on the design before conetruction begine. The aodel (depending upon the type of sot and the abllits of the dealgner to bulld an acourate nodel) mey be additionally useful to the actors and director in

37 Frieder1ch, pp. 165-68, Gasaner, p. 685.
38 Friederlch, pp. 171-78. Oxenner, pp. 312-16. Heffner, pp. 302, 304-307.

Visuallelng otage businese and movemont and to the light deelgner in trying lighting effeote.

Execution of a eet dealgn
conntructign.--Construction is frequently one of the nost time oonsuming taske in production of a ohow. If time and labor are minlmal, construction may be reduced by rouse of avallable constructed pleces and/or use of minlaum scenery in the design. A work schedule ehould be formulated to insure that the conetruction will be completed on tine.

Petnitinge-alny sot properly dealgnod in accord with oolor 1: almost certain to require painting even if avallable eet pleces are roused. The appearance of the set le largely due to the way in whioh it is painted; concequently, it 10 useShl to know some painting techniques and the offect they will ereate. 39

Flat palnting.--The palnt is bruched on amoothly, evon15, and quickly. mis is an excellent way for laying on the bese coat, but the surface will need texturing (unless the surface 1 tself 1 s textured as in etucco) to help give the appearance of hlghlighte and lowllghts undor etage llghting.
scumbling.--A falrly wet bruch is passed lightly and with long free etrokee in varlous directions over part of the base coat. Thle creates the offect of a rough uneron surface

39Gasaner, pp. 332. 758. Hoffner, pp. 287-89.
ac in eome plaster walle, rollage, and 00 on. Sevaral colore may bo uoed elaultanoouoly, and opattoring often followe this techalque.

Dragging, or dry bruching. --The technique 1s olallar to sounbling but diffore in that the bruch 1e drior and the otrozes are otralghtor. Dragging, or dry bruohlag, croatoe en effect of mood grein.

Sponging.--h large aponge is dipped into palnt, equeered out, and patted gantly on the base coat. Caro must be taken 80 that the covoring lo eron, unopottj, and of a continuous textural pattern. Bpattoring produces a rough or pattornod surface.

Nolling.-eA plece or coarse cloth 10 dipped in paint, wrung out, and patted or rolled over the baee coat. Rolling glves the effect of old plaster or rock.

Spattorine.--A bruch full of palnt 1 o shaken or snapped by the wriet so that drope of palnt fall on the base coat. Care muet be taken to mate the opote oven and of a falrly largo (but not enall pool) e1ze. Spattering gives the impreseion of a naturally toztured plain eurfaco and 18 Prequontly ueed with other methode to create varloue offecte.

St1ppl1ng.--A nodiun-กill bruch. 10 touched (brlotloe perpendicular to tho ourface) agalnat tho baoe coat. stippling oreater a plain textured surface.

Glasing.-ed thin, tranoparent wash of color le brushed orer another color or colore for the purpose of blending or tonlng.

Spraying.-هSpraying may be used olther to put on the base coat or to texture it in a manner similar to apattering or atippling.

Excopt in the case of scuabling, the texturine should be applied to deted bacc or othor toxture coate.

Other.--Cortalnly these are not all the poselble technlques for ecene painting. Actual work in scene painting will reveal any indifidual painting techniques, for scene painting 10. fascinating and uniquely creative art in iteolf.

Kountion the grox.--Mounting of the show by addition of technical eleaente generally begins with the addition of the eet.
setting etage.--Putting the set on stage requires time, labor, and the avallability of the stage and must be carofully - choduled.

8ot rohearsal.--Sot rohoarsal is for the actors to become eocuatomed to the set and for the eet designer to check the cot--for workabllity of doors, windows, and othor eot pleces; adaptation to blocting; integration with direction; and -0 on ad inflnitum.

Other technical rohearsala.--Addition of lighting, costumee, props, and other technical elemente alay require alteratione in the eot, particularly in ite color.

Drese rehearcal.--By the t1me drese rohearsal 1 e reached, the set should be completed.

Strlking eot.--Elane must be made to strike set after the last performance and to reture to proper etorage everythlag ueed in the ohow.

> Sot conelderations $\Delta$ pplied to gedtpun fiex

## Inforantion requicend <br> for the nif denten

Boript requiremente
The extoraal world of the play 10 clearly unroalletic 40 and, therefore, eubject to any modifloation or design at the director's diecretion; perheps soee Grecien ejebollea would be edricable.

Action would appear to require a permanent set in one locale, 41 a doomay into a palace, an altar, and adequate space for a chorue (if ueed).

Director's requiremente
The director's interprotation and opeciflc sot requiromonte were as followas

1. The claselcle of the sorlpt would be deonphasised somewhet.
2. Keallty would not be ettompted in the designs.
3. The rellgloue nature of the play would be deonphaelzed.
4. The set should be elmple, unornete, huge, and epacioue.

40 above, p. 45.
${ }^{41}$ Above, p. 47.
5. There ahould be huge palace doora.
6. There should be an altar.
7. There should be multiple levels for choris move-
nonte.
8. The set would be one permanent locale.
9. Some Grecian eymbollam should be used (such as columis). A aarbled appearance would be acceptable so long as the earbling would be sufficiontly subdued not to attract attention to 1teolf.
10. Although the director had been thinking in terme of a bleyseotrical eot, an asjanotrical one would be accoptable.
11. There would need to be entrences fromboth winge oufficlently large to adalt the chorus of flfteen.
12. Cool colors of low saturation and value would be ueed.

Other technical deelgn requiremente

The eet took predoalnance over all other technical areas except that 1 te color was determined in accordance with the costume dealgn. Blue, the coolest color, wee used as the bese colorf analogous oolore were used.for varlety, belance. and proportion. Blue-green and blue-red (purple), analogous cool colors, were used. Red-orange, an analogous wara color, wae used especially for the warmer, nore paselonal, moet differentleted rojal characters. The "xact color cholce wes
deteralned by the costume designer, for $1 t$ is generally eacier to max paint plgeents to metch a given color then it ie to dye cloth to metch a given color.

Equipment requirements
Shage ale.--The best waj to achleve a foellng of apace 1s to use negative mase, that 1 s, to 11 mit the amount of mass. In order to have huge doore and a feellng of hugeness, some large mase must be present. Consequently, to echleve hugeness and apaciousness almultaneously on an elghteen foot deep stage neceseltates a comproalse in how huge the mase can be and how vast the apace can be.

Two pleoes of mase wore necessar̈j--the palace doomaj and the altar. 42 Blejmetrical placement of the palace doorway In btage center would neceseltate plecing the altar down etage center to retain the blejmetricallom. Achleving a spacious foeling and utilizing many levels would seen more difficult with the two unite of ases placed in the plane of the limited stage depth than with the two unite of mase placed in the plane of the more apple thirty-elght feet stage width. Consequently, aepnetrical balance was chosen in preference to blejmaetrical balance.
shaht linge. - -Sight lines both in stage width and stage helght are limitatione in the state College Theatre. Half of the widh of the stage rear wall 1 e cuffoff from part of the
houae, so the palace door entrance would have to be within the contral ares fiolble to tho ontire audience. Noarly all of the wing area 1e visible to part of the house, so the winge would heve to be thoroughly mesked and yot permit entrance for flfteen chorue neabers. 13

Part of the foeling of apace could cone from verticle epace, or helghts however, this, too, would be lialted by sight lines in the state Colloge Theatre. With a maximum ralaing of the act toaaor (flftoon foot) only ton and one-half to thlrtoen foot of the real wall helght would be rislble to the belcony adience, and the lighting inetrumente and rear wall novie ecreen would need careful masking by tosers for the nain floor adience, eopecially those in the front rowe. Consequontly, verticle spectousnese would be greatly limited, too. Shifiling fagillther,-although scone ahlfting space is groatly lieited at state College Theatre, the pormanent aet and minimue prope would reduce the amount of fly and wing area noceseary.

Stage aralinbility.-Monnting large aaseos of many levels with llatted labor and working houre would require soveral days of stage uaage. In addition, levols chould be avallable to the caat for reheareal well in advance of the production dates. The etage at State College 1e echeduled not by the drame department, but by the koglatrar and Student Affalre Offices and occaelonal
other aolinc. Consequently, before a maselve set could be decided upon, it wae necessery to check with the fiegletrar and Student hffalrs Offlces about stage schoduling. from those offlces the following wee learned:

1. The Comanity Concert 11sted in the chool calendar for the stage on May 12 had been moved to the gymnablum. 2. The chorel concert llated for say 13 wae epparently a echool calendar aleprint.
2. On Mey 14 the women's Lay morning ascombly would be held on the etage.
3. The Beauty Pageant echeduled for the btage and 11 stod in the calondar ae Kay 16 had beon changed to Kay 8. (Th1e change in dete wee fortunete; the may 16 dete would have sade eotting e maselve set 1mposible.) The Eeauty Pageant prellalnerles would be held in the Union Ballroom.
4. On May 20 the flla serles movie was scheduled for showing eleewhere.
5. On Mey 22, the Komorlel Day ABsombly wee echeduled for the outdoor theatre; weathor might force it into the theatre. Hovever, elnce this was the day of the flrat perforaance, the set would heve to be mounted by that dete regerdless of 1 ts etyle or type.

Both offlces were asked to notify the speech department 1f additional scheduling occurred.

From the ebove date $1 t$ appeared that the only etrong atage confll ct between May 8 and key 22 would occur on May 14

When the Women's Day morning assembly would be held on the etage. There wae the poselbllity that the women'e Daj ascombly could be worked around partial mounting of the Pedipua fiex sot, so the Women's Day Conalttee wes noxt contacted. The presontetion of the ten top freshmen women scholers would probably occur before the act curtain; the two other parts of the morning aseomblyana one-act plaj and a Pasquette performance-owere each under the juriediction of their respective directors. Both directors were contected and both integrated their 1deas and sot plene around a partially mounted gedipul Rex_eet unlt. The student Aesoclation agreed to atage thelr Moj 8 Beautj Pageant on a twelve and one-half foot deep atage. It nuet be eaphaelzed thet without the integrated plans and comproaises of all the above groupe, the particular eet of maes and levels would have been lapoesible to mount by produotion dete. But, as a result of the integrated effort, the following tentative general echedule wae eet ups

1. On Saturcey, Nay 3, the final performance date of Ofichoaple the orlehomi set would be etruck, ableck drop would be hung at a twelve and one-half foot depth for the Seauty Pageant beotdrop, and the pletforme and large eot pleces for OPdipul Rex and Women's Day would be etecked on etege between the bleck drop and rear wall.
2. On Monday, May 5, the Komen's Daj staging would be painted and etored in the etage left wing.
3. On Tuesday, May 6, the Beauty Pageant set would be constructed, palnted, and stored in the etege left wing. (It must be remombered that the stage was at thla oame time boing used in late afternoons and evenings for the women's Daj oneact rohoarsale, Beauty Pageant rehearsale, and Qedipun fex reheareals.)
4. On Wednesdaj, Maj 7, the stage would be set for Beauty Pageant drese rohearsal.
5. On Thureday, May 8, after the show, the Boauty Pageant set would be etruck.
6. On Fridaj, Maj 9, work would begin on mounting the

## OMdjun Rer set.

7. On Saturday, May 10, additional work could be done on the gadloun Bex set, and stage wculd have to be set for the Yonon' ${ }^{\text {D D j }}$ ono-act and Pasquette showe. By the tlme thle date was reached in the schedule, a student ausic recital had beon sot for Sunday, Maj 11, and the Comanity Concert was rescheduled for the stage on Monday, May 12. (The later reeohedullag wae done on Maj 6 after the eot had been completely dealgned, conetruotion vas well under waj, and blocking had been rehearsed for the designed levels. Fortunately the concort group was a emall brass ensemble and did not need tho crill stage depth.) The additional changes in the stage echedullng made it necescary to set the stage on May 10 for the etudent recital (plano included) on lay il, the Comunity Concort group on Maj 12, and the one-act plaj and Pasquette
performance (plano included) on May 14. All these sets had to be planned with integrated concealment of the partially mounted ondipun ber eot.
8. One additional unrsported scheduling of a flla on Maj 17, after the set had been fully wounted, entered the sohedule. Fortumately, the flla wae able to be ehovn elsee where.
9. On the opening day of the ehow, Thuraday, May 22, the Menorlal Day Aseenbly was held outdoors. However, for a tien it wee felt thet it might be held in the theatre, and the teasers, altar, and follow spot were all moved without the mowledge or euperifion of the technical director. Alteratlons in the eet were readily percelved end corrected; however, the coft edged focus that had been adjusted on the follow apot had (unknown to the gedipun_ins technical orew) been altered to a clear hard odge which was cast on the blinded Oedipue during the oponing performance.

Tin and lebor arallable,--The cloae production dates and rolatively large casts of Orlahomal and Oadipun Rex made backetage workers and time most limited. Conaequently it wes aecessary to uae predominantly those aet plecee which were already constructed and avallable.

Othar equlpant aralleble. -oTho plastic plecee avallable would undoubtedly llelt the particular shape of the maesee, bot would be eufflolently numerous te provide aeveral levele. Conetruction and painting facillties and equipeent would be
generally ufflcient. Although lighting facllitiou are limited at stato Collego Theatro, they could be adapted to a peraanont, Poraallat1ooajebollot10 eet.

## Geaphle mopoilng of the me dinden

Producing the deolgen
Doalcaing a eot la naturally a vers individual art. but 000 of the general conelderatione of thle particular dee 01 cos w111 be llated ae an indlcation of one way to apply oono of the desige conalderatione.

Doalen began with the two baelc pleces of aese-othe palace doorvag and the altar. Beoauce the altar was loee oubject to the docends of reallon, it was chooen as the flrst plece for detalled doelgning.

Denimang the shane unde.o-Thet the altar should belance She palace doorway, appear Greclan, be ueable by the chorue, and require alnlaum oonetruction were the genoral conelderations In 1ts doalgo.

The altar dealgn atarted with rough thumbnall pencll aketohoe. When a general sketoh of a rectangular altar with colum oupport wae tontatlvely declded upon, the meaeuromente wore worked out in aooordance with the conclderatione in reality and the golden eection. The following oonalderationo were taken from reallty:

1. An approximate altar hoight (for a knoeling poalt10a) 1e froz the taee to the middle of the upper arm, roughis tronty-alght inchea.
2. A roughiy coafortable kneoling hoight ia ton inchea from the floor.
3. A roughly comfortable knoollng aurface depth 1s ten lachee deep.
4. Newepaper tubling (a poesible etage aubatitute for a column) haa a dianotor of four inches.

The dimenalone wore then applied to ame princlples of belance and proportion. In order to determine whether the nowepaper tubling would be eatlafaotosy, a acale drawing of a colum four inohea in diameter (the diameter of newapaper tub1ng) and twonty-elght inchea high (rough altar helght) wae made. The proportion appoared satisfactory and pleaalng and was a rough multiple of the golden aeotion.

In the aketch, the coluans had been placed approzimately one column dianotor distance apart; howovor, putting a bace on each colum would rake a greater spece between columis seem desirable, so twioe the dianotor of the colum (oight inches) vas used between the columna. An approximete elx foot altar length (including the Eneeling bese) was selected. Thie would make a $10^{\prime \prime}$ (knoellng depth). $4^{n}$ (colunn depth), $8^{n}$ (space betreen columan). $4^{n}, 8^{n}, 4^{n}, 8^{n}, 4^{n}, 8^{n}, 4^{n}, 10^{n}$ divielon of the alx foot posalble. The $28^{\prime \prime}$ high altar meas vould be $52^{\prime \prime}$ long; with the golden ecction, the width should then be approximatels
thirtj-two inches. 时 ubing throe columne in a $10^{n}, 4^{n}, 8^{n}$, $4^{n}, 8^{n}, 4^{n}, 10^{n}$ arrengenent, the altar mase was $28^{\prime \prime}$ deop, and the kneellng base was 4' by 6'. These dimencione wore all asequatoly pleaelng and tentatively recorded. The lator coluna would noed becking, proforably not touching thom. A $3^{\prime}$ bj $1^{\prime \prime}$ bj $28^{n}$ high rectangular solld would allow $4^{n}$ betwoen the colld and the colume. Thue, the tontative top working draving for the altar became Diagram 1 , the tentative alde working drev1ng becane Dlagran 2, and the tentative front working drawing becane Dlagraa 3.

Even w1thout a detalled dealgn of the palace doorwaj, It was apparent that the $6^{\prime}$ by $4^{\prime}$ by $38^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{h} 1 \mathrm{gh}$ altar unit would mo inalgnifloant in comparison to the masolvo doore and palace lovele. Concoquontly, it seomed advieable to place the altar on soee other level(e).

80 the noxt atop was conolderation of the avallable platform and atop unites

2 platforme $6^{\prime} \times 3^{\prime} \times 26^{\prime \prime}$
2 platform $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime} \times$ adjuctable holghte
1 platforn $8^{\prime \prime} 9^{\prime \prime} \times 3^{\prime} \times 6$ 6"

4 stope $8^{\prime} \times 1^{\prime} \times$ 年"
2 atep unite with triple stepe dealgned eapecially for uce with the flrat two mentioned platforme




2 platforme (Diagram 4) of skowed etructure ( $4^{\prime}$ wlde, 7' long on one elde and 9' long on the other) with two levele (the larger one $15^{n}$ high, the analler one 7 it $^{n}$ h1gh)

The two largeet platforne ( $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime}$ ) wore eaved for the palace door unit which would obrlously be the larger maes, and the two ekewed platforae were tentatively coneldered for the altar unit. By placing the two akewed platforas with the long aldes together, thelr $15^{\prime \prime}$ levele would be approprlately elsed to hold the $6^{\prime}$ by $4^{\prime}$ kneeling base of the altar. (If the laceling base of the altar had been too large or alnutely maall in comparison with the eecond level of the skewed platfones, it would heve been poeelble to redeeign ite dimenelione.)

Next it was iaportant to doteraine whether the platfores would fit on the stage area within elght lines, so a rough and ecale floor plan with the jolned $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime}$ platforme and the jolned skowed platforna was ototohed. Thore appeared
 elgned for the back of the jolned skewed platforme, and the altar unit becane the tentative dealgn of Diagran 5.

Ae tentatively dealgned, the altar could be ueed for the initial offering of the prieet, Jocasta'e prajer, and the varied chorue novemonte. $\Delta$ box or bowl for incense, smoke, or flre could be added to the altar top.

Denigning the palan door unls. - In dealgning the palace door unit, 1mportant conolderatione wore huge doors, uee of columse, and use of many levele.


DIMRPM 4.--8kewed platform dealca, leoretric viow.


80910 t" $=1$ 1.
(sooond steved platform 1s the reverse of this.)

DIAGRAM 5.--Alter dealan. top viow, base added.


Uelng double doors would help give elze to the door opening and two $3^{\prime}$ wide doore were tontatively planned. With a $6^{\circ}$ width in opening, the golden section would require roughly a $10^{\prime}$ height. Doors of such dimension were skotched to ecale, appeared proportionally pleasing, and became the tentative door dimenelons.

Atentative column dlameter of 2ie' was chosen by rough estlate of a colum width from a hand epread measurement and eetting a $2 f^{\prime}$ wide plece of beaverboard on etage and 1magining 1te offect es atotal, tall, three-dimenelonal oolumn.

Mext the avallable levels were considered. By placing the two largest levels with their $8^{\prime}$ idee togother and uelng their $15^{\prime \prime}$ lage, the four $8^{\prime} \times 1^{\prime} \times$ 炜" etep unite (the two $4^{\prime}$ $x 1^{\prime \prime} X 7 \frac{1}{2}^{\prime \prime}$ etepe oould be used for the altar rear) could be placed around the platform and give two complete levele ae in Diagran 6.

The doore could be opposite the $16^{\prime}$ etop. Centering the $6^{\prime} 9^{\prime \prime} \times 3^{\prime} \times 6 \xi^{\prime \prime}$ platform before the doore would allow for a colum on elther alde of the platform and an additional level from the platform itself as In Diagran 7.

At thie point the palace unit wae developing into a palace doorway with descending atepe and platforme. To strengthen the subordinated columer masee, two colums were added to the other two cornere of the escond level. Ralsing the $8^{\prime \prime} 9^{\prime \prime} \times 3^{\prime \prime}$ platform to $15^{n}$ (two atope above the large platforme) a fourth etep in height would be provided. A $14^{\prime}$ step munning the full
breadth of the platforme would provide the third atop, and beses for the columne near the door could be 7 t" $^{\prime \prime}$ higher then the 8'9" platform for a fifth leval as in Dlagran 8.

The $6^{\prime}$ wide door opening would permit 4 ' of wall from -1ther ilde of the door opening to the platform edge. The proportionate appearance of such dimenelona were checked by soale drawing, Diagran 9, and tontatively used.

Hext the two deslgned eet units were placed on a floor plan to detormine whether they could be placed on the etage In ecoordenoe with the etage depth and eight linee. Thie was poselble.

Appcoping the delign, $-\infty$ A rough paper model of the genoral maes areas of the designed tentative eet was made, and the direotor wae coneulted for general approval-disapproval, auggentions, and 00 on. The goneral sase areas wore accoptable to hle; it wee euggeeted (1) to move the pelece unlt downetage columas farther apart to ald alght linee and (2) to conelder etronger balance between the two halves of the etage.

The downetege coluene were moved farther epert on a level with the $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime}$ platforme ( $15^{n}$ from the $5100 \%$ ) and the two $6^{\prime}$ X $3^{\prime} \times 26^{\prime \prime}$ platforme and a triple otep wore added backetage for palace door ontranoes and exite ae in D1agram 10.

Poselble additione to the wolght on etege left (the palace unit was placed on etago right, the etronger alde of the etage, and the eltar wae placed on stáge left) were a large barren tree upatage of the altar and bent toward atage center

DIAGRAM 6.--Palace unit dosign, top viow, flrat atop.

Scale: $\boldsymbol{f}^{\prime \prime}=1$ 。


DIAGRAK 7.--Palace unit dealgn, top view, cocond step.


DIMOMA B.--Palaoe unit deaign, top view, third atop



DIAORM 10.--Palace unit dealgn, top view. fourth step


and/or a atylizod eky drop with palnted triangular accont ilnos leading toward etege center. In addition, the blocked chorus moremente around the altar would add wolght to otage loft, and the palace unit should be the dominant unit. Both or olther ueing the accented eky backing or tree wee acceptable to the director at a balance for the stage. Addition of a ground row was suggeotod, but ellminated as a detriment to the requiromante of anglicity and epeolouenese.
 The floor plan wae drawn and elght lines were rechocked. Diagras 11 show that the pelace door and altar wore sufficiontly Vislble to all of the houee and the nge are completely conocaled. The elght lines from the balcony would include two feet above the door opening. Concealing column tope, door Nat top, and lighting inetruments from the main floor audlence could be aocoapllehed by hanging of several teasers.

Prior to blocking reheareale, ooples of the floor plan wore run off on the ditto machine and dietributed to the director and cast and floor plane were palnted on the two reheareal room floore.
conftructing the model.--The set maeses wore conetructed to coale from balea wood. When the aodel pleces wore ready for eesebllng, the director wae egaln consulted. Twootiered beses for the columne were suggeeted; the close measuremente of the columns at the sides of the door made $\dot{-r}^{-}$ft necessary to reduce the columne to two feet in diameter to accommodate two-tiered

## DIAGRAM 11

## SIGHT LINES OF FLOCA PLAN


beses. Thls adjustrent was made. A $14^{\prime}$ height with the ?' diamoter columns would then make them directly proportional to the altar columne.

Use of a large plastlc sheet for the sky drop was considered becaune of the poseible runny offect in esy lines that could be echlered in painilng it. If ueed and flown from the farthest upatage countorwolght ( $1 \frac{1}{2}$ ' from the pear wall), 1t vould be necessary to wire the counterweight batten farther upstage to provide more acting ares.

The model column wore altered, the model was assembled, and the tentative set dosign was complete.

Dealgning the Daloning--As hat been explained, 44 the colora--blue-green, blue, blue-red (purple), and red-orangewere designed in accordanos with the costumes and accepted by the director.

It was decided to use an unohtrusive marbled effect 45 aa a palnting technlque. The appearance of marble would help convey the effect of large, weighty maes; emooth elmpllcity; and a Grecian nature. 46

A basic appllcation of grajed (uncaturated) blue-greon, blue, blue-red, and red-orange each marbled with a more eatureted ame hue would keep the euggestion of marbling without calling undue attention to the marbled"offect.
44Above, p. 9 ?.
45Above, p. 92.
46 Авоте, p. 91-92.

Tho dietrlbution of solors on the eet plecen was done 1mprossionl atlcally-stsfletlcally.

Recording the dealgn
The ot 1 s graphically recordod with a floor plan, Diagran 12; model, Plate I; and working drawinge, Diagreme 1 to 11 and 14 to 17. More detalled working drawings wore not neceseary, for all conetruction was under the direct superviel on of the set dealgner-technical director.

The palnting for the set it graphically recorded in Tables 5 and 6 and Dlagram 13. Table 5 gives the formulae for mating the ckotoh colors and wixing the painting colors. Table 6 givee examples of the production colors for the baelo chorus woan's costuses, sot skotchos, and sot base and marbling palats. Diagran 13 ohowe the color distribution on the set.

## Exnauting tho gat dnelen

Constructi on and ascembling requironents

Palace 000 unle cequlenments.--The palace undt required the following oonetruction and aesembling:

1. Bulld rour columas-two $13^{\prime} \mathrm{h}$ gh and two $15^{\prime} \mathrm{hlgh}$. Each column wae constructed with four round 5/8" plywood discs ae bases and contral braoes. Ton knotches wore then cut in each disc odge at a dopth of nearly ong inch. The knotches wore cut so that $1^{\prime \prime} \times 2^{n}$ g wore pounded anugly into then. The

PLATE
SET MODEL


PLATE II
SET

table 5
BET COLORS EORMULAE ${ }^{2}$

| Color | Skotch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ | Paint ${ }^{\text {c }}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Part | P1 gmont |
| $\mathrm{Marbll}_{\mathrm{BO}}$ | Llght Elue Greon | 1 6 2 8 | Irory Drop Black kinting <br> Emerald Groon <br> Itallan Blue |
| Marbling B | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Blue } \\ & \text { Gray } \end{aligned}$ | 1 8 4 | Irory Drop Black whiting <br> Am. Jl\&ramerino Blue |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Marbliag } \\ & \text { aR } \end{aligned}$ | Mauve | 6 3 6 2 | Whiting <br> Solforino Lake <br> English Vonetian Red <br> A*. Uleraarino Blue |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Merbling } \\ & \text { RO } \end{aligned}$ | Voralllion Orange | 2 1 1 | miting Englioh Vernillion French Orange Mlneral |
| Gray |  | $\frac{1}{8}$ | Irory Drop Black Vhiting |
| Base 80 |  | 9 2 | Gray Marbling BO |
| Bace 8 |  | 6 | Gray Marblling B |
| Bese ER |  | 9 2 | Gray Marbling BR |
| Base RO |  | 2 | Grej <br> darbling RO |
| 858 |  | 10 | Morbling $B^{-}$ Whiting |

Esurnt Turtey Umber was used additionally for anrbllas the doorn.
benue Coloring Poncile, Americar Lead Foncil Co.
cooth1c Color Co., Inc., New Yort City

## PRODUCTION COLORS SAKPLES



SET PAIMTI\＆G


PALACE TOP


ALTAR FRONT


ALTAR 8R


ALTAR SL

ALTAR TOP


3cale：t゙ェ1＇。


PALACE FRONT

PALACE 8R


PALACE SL

ton $13^{\prime}$ or $15^{\prime \prime} 1^{\prime \prime} \times 2^{\prime \prime}$ B were loveled and Berowed Bocurely to the plgwood discs. The columne were next covered with light muslin whioh wae strot ched vory tightly and stapled and glued to each $1^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{X}$ 2"plece. Pert of one column was painted with olze water to dotereine whother the fluting wae eufflcient. Although the fluting was apparent, it was made more obvious by ripping $2^{\prime \prime}$ lath into three strips and tacking strips outside the eusiln on esch of the $1^{\prime \prime} \times 2^{\prime \prime}$. See the woriking drewing of Diagram 14. The finishod product gave a strong appearance of fluting as can be soon in any of the plates from Plate II to Flate XVII.
2. Build two doors. The potential unwleldiness of doore $3^{\prime} \times 10^{\prime}$ was a strong concern in conetruction of the doors. If they had beon attached to the flate bealde tbem, the flate would have had to be strongly and flrmij hold. The flate, however, did not reet on the floor, had little room for bracing, and ovon with strong bracing would be easily moved bj opening and closing such large and heavy doors. ConsequentIy it was determined to mate the doors as light ae poselble and to attach thea to supporte other than the flate. The doors could be aade relativols light by constructing canvas flats, beaverboard flats, or unbreced plywood diheets. Plywood sheots were choson for thelr extra durabllity and better integration with the plans for the attachmont of the doors.

If the doors were extended behind and begond the edge of the door opening, thej would help create the lllusion of thletr
walle and could be bolted to motal strape; which could nove around the plpee of two avellable lighting stende; see Diegrame 15 and 16. becauce the lighting otande wore not sufflolently tall to rest on the floor and support the doors, they would have to be atteched to the beoketege platforme. Wolding large motal beses onto the lighting stand bottome would provide a meane for bolting the stande to the backstage platformes see Dlagran 17.
3. Attach the door poots to the backotage platfores.
4. Bulld a mall flat for above the door.
5. Aesemble the door frame from the above flat and two $14^{\prime} \times 4^{\prime}$ Rlate in otock.
6. Chock the $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime}$ platforme for loose nalle or boarde, bolt on legs, join thom, and okirt thea with beavorboard.
7. Attach the door flate to the $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime}$ platforme.
8. Cheolt the $8^{\prime}$ stepe and join then to one another and the $8^{\circ} \times 7^{1}$ platforme.
9. Put lege and a elpt on the $8^{\prime \prime} 9^{\prime \prime} \times 3^{\prime}$ platform and join $1 t$ to the $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime}$ platforme.
10. Build the $14^{\prime}$ otop and join it to the palace platforme.
11. Bulld four falee, tlered column basee of beaverboard.
12. Dutchman onj large seams with auslin.

Altar undt requicomenth.--The altar unit would require the following construction and assembling:




1. Cut alno coluna froll nowepaper tublag.
2. Cut nino square colum bases froa $1^{\prime \prime} \times 6^{\prime \prime}$ lumber.
3. Put the colunan baces on the columas.
4. Mazo an altar top of throomply pljwood with a $1^{\prime \prime}$ X $2^{\prime \prime}$ odging.
5. Attach tho altar top to tho columas.
6. Maze the roctangular $1^{\prime} \times 3^{\prime \prime} X 28^{\prime \prime}$ backing for the colvone froa beevorboerd and a $1^{\prime \prime} \times 2^{\prime \prime}$ frane. (It would oupport no woight and be merely for appearance.)
7. Mato tho knooling altar baco platform ( $6^{\prime} \times 4^{\prime} \times 10^{\prime \prime}$ ). Before conatruction of this unit began, a platform longer and lower wae found in a dump area. It was sawed to a $6^{\prime}$ length and legs and a beaverboard skirt wore added.
8. Choot tho orowod platfore for looce nalls and boarde, attah thew togothor, and akirt them with beavorboard.
9. The two $4^{\prime}$ otop unito would havo to.be attachod togethor and to the stewed platforme. Bofore actual ascombly, rohoareal roveald that only tho prioat mountod the altar unit Pron the rear, and, therofore, only one $4^{\prime}$ atep unit wac noeded. 10. Attach tho altar pioce to tho mooling base and the rneellng bace to the kewod platforne.
10. Dutohran any lerge soere with muelin.
gtr drop and sene ceouleamain,-oto propare tho okJ drop, put battons both at tho top and the bottom of the plastic anoot. secure a doad tree and put foot 1 rone on $1 t$
for ecrewing it to the atage floor by means of atage serewe.
Rucchandng cequicerente.--The conetruction would require the purchace of the following aterialas
11. bolta, nuta, and waohers for bolting lega on the $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime}$, altar knoeling, and $8^{\prime} 9^{\prime \prime} \times 3^{\prime}$ platfores
12. beavorboard for the rectangular solld beh1nd the altar coluens and for the ekirts on the platforas and stepe
13. three-ply plywood for the altar top and palace doora
14. Plreoply (5/8") plyrood for the colunn disee
15. $1^{n \prime} \times 2^{n}$ lusbor for the colume
16. long eoreve for colum seeembly
17. llght muelln to oover the ooluma
18. new jlg eav bledes to cut the column diaca
19. and have welded etende and hingea for the door

## asoonbly

10. lath atripa for the column and a plastlc drop wore purabased

Other equipmont wae already avallable in the ahop.
Kock sohndule ceoulcementhe-okint of the technicel work on the stete College pleye 10 done by the clesees in theatre production, but additional help uavally comes from the local oast of the Alphe Pal Onega national honorary dranatice freternity. The Alphe Pel Oegen nembere vere eapecielly holpful
on the conatruction and mounting of the ondlpun Bns sot. The 11alted number of otudente in the production classes and the close production datee of orlahomal and Ondipur inn ande it nocoseary to act Alpha Pol Onega memboro to aooume half of the work of oonatructing, wich they agroed to do.
$\Delta$ ochedule of conotruction tlme and persone to do each pleoe of conotruction wae set up, dittoed, posted, and dian tributed to all wortere.

Mounting the show
Belitng afnge-aprior to outting atage, the avallable platforme, stops, and flats had been brought from the storage carage to the stage and oceno ohop, the altar unlt including the lnoeling base was asoombled, the four colume were bullt. the doore were conpleted, and legs were put on the $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime}$ platforms.

On Priday. May 9, work began on assenbling the cet unlte on stage. The colunne, doore, and altar wero carried an stage frou the scone ohop. (The heavier platfore had been -tored on stage behlsd the Beauty Pageant backdrop untll May 9.) The ontlre altar unlt wae acoonbled. The palace $8^{\prime} \times 7^{\prime}$ platforme wore jolned and permanently set on the atage floor. The $8^{\prime} \times 1^{\prime}$ eteps wore attached to one anothor and the $8^{\prime} \times 7^{1}$ platforme. Flfteen lach lege were bolted on the $8^{\prime \prime} 9^{\prime \prime} \times 3^{\prime \prime}$ platform. And one door was set in 1 te approximato poaltion.

On Saturday, Key 10, the falee, tlered colunn baseo were cut fron boavorboard, tho flate woro cocurod to the palace undt, the $8^{\prime} 9^{\prime \prime} \AA 3^{\prime}$ platrorm wae attaohed and okirted, the $14^{\prime} X l^{\prime}$ etep wae bullt and attachod to the palace unit, the two upatage colume were secured, and thoir faloo bacoe added. (The two downetage ooluans could not have been properly conconled during the Maj 14 performances if thoy had beon aesenbled.) One door wae bolted in place. (The backatage platform to hold the other door wae being ueed for the May 14 one-act ples performance.) The altar unlt weo okirted with beavore bomrd, complotoly dutohmanod for peinting, and stored as a unitin the etage loft wing. The Vomen' Dey one-act and Pasquetto cet plecee were taken from the otage loft wing the etege wee set for the Maj 11 student muolc recital, May 12 Cormunity Conoert, and May 14 onseact and Paaquette perforcanoee. Saall portion of palnt plgoonte woro mixed to match the four coetune 001 ors and wore used for tho sot modeling colore. The four modeling colore were eech alxed with eevorel parts of gray for the four baee colore. The palnte were applied to the eet nodel and approved by the director. The otage wae not agaln avallable untll Thuradaj, May 15. On that day, claseos and ovening rehearal on etage pore nitted only lialted work on the set--the two upstage column beses wore dutchmamed and one of tho fats which had boen a bright red wae covered with whiting-alze metor.

On Friday, Maj 16, the downatage columne wore sot, tho coond door was eet, one downstage coluan false baae was completed, and the pelace levels vere dutchmanned. During the ovoning rehearbal on atage aome of the llghta wore aot. 47

Seturdey, Maj 17, wes devoted to henging the llghte, manging teaeera to coscesl the lights and eot top, aetting the ringe and backing for the palace doora, mixing the palat, and pelnting the sot.

Palatias the she.--The base cost of the unsaturated cot colore was applied with bruahes. After the base coat was Ary, merbllas with tho more anturatet sot color wes oxecuted with a large foathor duoter.
after the set wae up and palnted, llghts were tried both to deteralne whether the eky epace would need additional llghting and to try various reedinge for the entlre set.

The general appearance of the aet with the unbroken eurfece of the stage rear wall was a balanced one; the negatlve mee of etj helped balance the palace door ame. Concoquently, although the plaotic drop had boon purchased and wae lald out for palnting, the rear wall waa used for the eky and no tree wat added. The sky was slat-palnted a highor value of the aodeling blue and left untextured, for the wall ltaelf 1 s a etuooo texture. The rear wall was peinted up to the level of the movie screen; there wep a posslbillty that the screen would be reaoved onabling the wall to be painted
oeveral foet higher (beyond the alght ine of the eain floor noon row) in an effort to increase the vertlcal ipace. Sat ceboncanle-con sunday, kay 18, the cet rohearcal, handles wore put on the backs of the doors, the rate and way to pull the act curtain was oot, the down right and up loft Wag flate wore given addtional bracing, and the jobe to be done before Monday were aselgned--purchase batterles for the prowptor's Plashllght, paint olght ilnes in the wing areas, sarrb the floor (tito ground cloth vag used), and olther set a toacer to cover the movio soreen and unpainted part of the reer well (1f the movie screen were not removed) or paint hlgher up on the rear wall (1f the ecreen were romoved). Cihar fechnton cohegraik.e-On Hondey, Kay 19, the prope, lighte, and sound (other than the tyapent beate) were added. The lighting affected moat ftrongly the doomvay bj deomphasising 1t. The director wanted a proninent doorwas for the royal entrancesi concequontly, false thlcienese was added to the doore and posto and $11 n t e l$ wore painted eround the doorwaj.

The ontering rojalts was cautloned about tranpling on the bactrtage platrorme prior to entrancet and about opening the door eufflciontly widely to revoel tho 1 de of the opening.

A teacer had been set to cover the movle screen whlch would not be removed.

On Tuesday, hay 20, costumes and nakoup wore added. The oast had to be cautioned to remaln behind sight ines in
the winge, not to bunp the act curtain, and not to traaple the backetege platforme. A ctet mezber mee eselgned the job of properly openlag and cloalaf the door for all ontrences. stlll nore emphasis mas manted for the doors; consequently, during the next dey, the hinges were eaphasized by changing their color and dartening thelr outline, and the doors wore marbled with burnt turkej unber. During liednesdej, trucke for the set etrike on fridaj were orlered froa malntenance. Den: cohencmi.--lindnendey, Kaj 21 , wee drese rehearcal. A fastor final curtain was necoseary and posting the etrike llat was eot for the noxt daj.

Receocmagene-on Thuredey, Maj 22, the daj of the f1rat performance, the set had to be readjuated after movesent bj the Menorlal Day Assenbly crew.

On Pridas, May 23, the trucke were gotton for etrlking the cet, and the ohow wae etruck lamediately after the final curtein.

## CHAPTPG <br> DRBTONTN AND ERFCUTTMO THE COBTHRTHO

## TABLE OF' COHTENTS FOi: CHAPTET V

## Part 1. Geavral Conelderations in Costuming

| fro purposee of costuming | Page |
| :---: | :---: |
| ceneral purpose . . . . . . . . . . . . . 131 |  |
| Dofinition dehlevement |  |
| Epectrlo purpone . . . . . . . . . . . . . 131 |  |
| Dofini 21 on Achievement |  |

Three variablee of oowtusing
Line in contuming ..... 133Outaide 11nesInternal 11ne:
applied line: syabollc lines
Fabrle in costuming ..... 136
Drape of fabricleave of fabricTexture of fabric
Color in costuning ..... 138
Charactorlatios of colorsurface area of colorEymbollc olgniflcance of eolor
Producing a costume design
Information required for a dealon ..... 140
Besic requirementsScrlpt requiromontsDlroctor'm roquirementsOther technical doalgn requiromentsBlocking requimmentiquipmont roquiremente ..... Page

Oraphic reoording of a costume design

Oraphic reoording of a costume design ..... 143
Execution of a costume design ..... 144
sothod of executionCoatume rehearealDrese rehoarsal
Eart 2. Costuming Conelderatione Applied to GRApul lex
Informetion required for the coetune desten
Baelc requirements ..... 147
8oript requiremonts ..... 147
Director's requireanente ..... 148
Other tochnical dealgn roquiremonte ..... 149
8locking requireaente ..... 149
Equipeont requiremente ..... 150
Oraphse recording of the costume design
Produolnt the dealgn ..... 150
hietorioal benieHisterioal application
Recording the design ..... 155
Sxecution of the costune dealgn
Making the costumes ..... 156
Costune reheareal ..... 156
Drece reheareal ..... 156

## BODY FOK CHATTE: V. DESIOLIMG

## Gonoral Conoldorations In Costualng

## Tro purposar of contumina-canchi and apecicie

## Goneral purpose

2efingtion, - The fundamental purpose of the contumes-e 1ndeed of all the tochnical aroas of the production-ole to enbance In the best posilble way the expreesion of the play. ${ }^{1}$ Aohlevarent, - The otyle and mood of the pley'm oxpreaolon aro dotoralined by the director and muet be adhored to for maxlmum productional offectivenes. Close coordination among all tochnical aroas is also essential for maximum tochafcel offeotivenese.?

## 8pecific purpone

Deflaltion, --Contumes share with makoup the added func-sloz-ang an Intlmate part of the actor who woars thome-of melping each actor in hie portrajal of character. 3 Proper -ostume dealgning tares into account the actor hiaself es well as the role he 1s acting.
$1_{\text {Bowean, p. 155. Qaenener, pp. 118, 320. Hermor, p. } 428 . ~}^{\text {. }}$ ${ }^{2}$ Dolmang pp. 375-76. Gagner, pp. 118, 392. Hoffner, pp. 419, 427-28.

3Gasenor, pp. 119, 393. 395. Hofmer, p. 419.

Achlernneate-athe actor w1ll givo to a role a epecis1c intorprotation intogrally a part of himself in bodily outline. bodily movenont, and unique personality. It is frequontly nocoseary to concoal or modify by costumes sone bodily foatures not in reoplng with the role (apparent wolght, etature, posture, and so forth), but $1 t 1$ s equally 1mportant to onphasizo tho actor' boally foatures and movement which give etrongth and onphaele to hie charactorisation. Llkowlso, tho undquo foatures of the actor's personallty that aro aseote to the charaoterization chould be onphesized. In fact, if a costume 1. conotructod 00 as to roflect tho charaoterlzation, the characterization 1a litely to lmprove, for the actor will be les conectous of himeelf ae a person and more conecious of h1e characterleation. ${ }^{4}$

Contumes aro porhape oven more laportant for the actor in holplag the audionce and other actors identify and fooua proper attontion on hlm ae givon charactor. 5 for examples, in a role demending individuel recognition by the audience (chorve roles in muelcale frequently lact thie requiroment). difforentlation 1 a roadily achlored by coatumes. For a role In which the actor ontors fow times for short ecenos, it is ofton wlee to refrain from costumo change for him so that his identity 1 e more cortaln to remaln toar for the audience.

4aseaner, p. 401.
5ozeanor, pp. 118, 392. Keffner, pp. 419-20.

Costumes can not only help the audience plek out a Given character but also reveal to them what kind of person he 10 with as moh explicitness as the sorlpt demands. 6 Character retelation oan be acomplished in sereral wajes Cootumes can help donote tlme and place (complete reallam and hletorlcal acouracy 10 eoldom necessery, but accurate and careful study of the droee of hlatorlcal periodae-eapecially of -12houette 11nose-10 oscontlal for the costume designer). Costuses can also help denots age, economlc etatue, sociel statue, race, rocation, tastos, and omotional statoo.

The sore clearly each costune fulfllls 1 ts opeciflo purpose, the nore clear, credible, and onjojable the charactorisation will be for the audionce, other actors, and the actor h1meelf.

## Than molnopen of contuming

The costumes can be varied to fulflll thelr general and opeoific purpoees by varying the three propertiee of costuno dealgn that can be controlled-oline, fabric, and color. 7

## Line in costuring

To achlore varletfo-hlghlights and lowllghtse-in costume appearance, the lines must select broad baelc fectore and ollalnate minuto detali; etage distance (except in the caeo of intimetely close audionces) and stage lighting fuse

[^12]detall into an unbrokon surface. Costune 11 nee should be simplo, unaturally pronounced, lacting in dotall, and broad and bailc in offocti ${ }^{8}$ thej may have outolde, intoraal, applied, and/or aynbollo use in costualng dealgn.

Guring 11ne.--The most laportant 11 noe of a costume are the outside lines which give $1 t$ 1ts shape, or 11 houotto. 9 Accurate etudy of the clothing of the verioue culturee and periode of hiatory is esentiall0 (1n holping the costumer coleot the correct ellhouotto lines and ellalnate the unnecese eary other lines) 15 the costunce are to be aome type of mode flod roallen. (As has beon statod bofare, fow costumes ohould - ver be conpletoly roallatlc; celection of elgniflcant lines and ellalnation of othere 10 genorally nocescary to project costumes through atage lighting and dietance to an audionce.) Costrmen can, of course, be completely fanciful. But, evon in designing fanciful costuses, a knowledge of varioue ellhouette IInoe and the offoct tbes produce can be a groat ascot in achloviag a dosirod fanclful sllhouetto.

[^13]Intimend_dinet, - Internal lines--those within the contume-are mede by the cut and drape of the garment. They are the folds. pleate, and diagonale that give throo-dimonelonallam and aymbollc algnifloance to a costume.

Apolied_linen. 11 --Line can be applled to matorlale - Ither bj the addition of a decoration of buttons, brald. embroldery, acceseorlee, and so on or by a surface pattern of ahecke, etrlpes, and so on. Great caution muet be exercised in appljing line so thet it 10 aufficiontly broad, 11-ited, and siaple for the desired stage effect. For examples: A pattern of narrow red and blue etripes appeare to be an unbrokon purple surface to the audionce; brald and trim not of a loose open pattern appear solid; all minute detalle are fused.
 frea an object in neture with the ontire objoct, and the part -ooes to aymbollze the object. Line aymbollam 10 juat one type of ejmbollen that the ooetumer can uee. vorticle column11ke lines auggeat dignity, otrongth, sejeaty. forizontal 11nes suggest, ropose, etabllity, coronity. Diagonal lines cugeset distortion, powor, force, that which 1e drematis or dymatic. That a line 10 curved, Jagged, extended, short, heavy, or light may aleo tond to omphacize a nood.

[^14]Pabric in costuming
The fabric used in costuming can aleo roflect the production's otyle and mood and help revoal charactors. A fabrlc's varlables are its speciflc drape, weave, and texture. ${ }^{13}$

Drape of fabrick-aA fabric may be light and soft so that it floete diagonally from the body; $1 t$ may be heavy and eoft eo that it hangs in long verticle folds or clings to the bodys $1 t$ may be light or heavy and stiff so that it holde rathor rigid fora. Table 7 1s a listing of soveral fabrice for each of the four poselble types of drape. 14

## TABLE 7

Fabric drape

|  | Stiff | Soft |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Light | organdy, taffota, taro letan, tulle, not. collophane | volle, chiffon, gauze. cheesecloth, crepe de Chine, lawn, georgette |
| Heavy | brocades, thow satin, upholetery rabrice, welghted muolln, canvas, sall cloth, some Eetel cloths | volvot, jersey, monk's cloth, duvetyn. flannel torry oloth, ratine. wolghted silk, some cottone and muslins |

Generally opeaking one can get expensive and inexpenolve fabrice of any given drape, and, for costualing, many of
${ }^{13}$ Dolman, p. 375. Gaeaner, Pp. 391, 760. Heffner. pp. 434-35.

14Gasener, p. 760.
the oheaper fabrics can be made to appear lite the expenelve ones fron the otego. Becauce the cut of the costume or addition of sising will arfect the drepe sonowhet, but not croatlJ, little can be done to make ono drape appear llko another. Consequontly it is essential to know the drape of the rabric, for the drapo dotoralnec intornel and bymbolic 11nes. 15

Hina of cnbcice. ${ }^{16}$--The way the throade of a fabric are Intorlaced elve to it ite particular weavo: fabrice cen be clacelfled according to thelr weave by placing them an a continuve roa nost coarse to most 11no.

Social and eccenonio status and vocation are frequently indicated by the woave of a cloth-eroyalty woar finer fabrica than peasanta; outdoor people wear coareer fabrice than do those of the drawing room.

The woave of a fabric oan be altered in appearance by the costumer, but it 1: more ourely altored by the otage lightIng. The costuer should early study the effecto of stage lightlng on verioue besic fabrice' weares, textures, and colors. Terthe of fibreian.17-eThe relat100 amount of l1ght that a fabric aurface colectivoly renocts or absorbs varlee

15Gasanor, p. 760. youns, pp. 22-23. 16Gaesner, pp. 760-61.
17 Bomen, pp. 99-100. Dolman, p. 375. Gasoner, pp. 761-65. Young, DP. 23-26, 61-76.
ereatly fiving each fabric lts surface appearance, or texture. Fabric texturet can be placed on a continuum from mont ching to moat dull. Anc, llte weare, texture la an laclcator of a perton'e eoclal, oconoulc, end vocatlonal ztatue.

The toxture of a rabric will certainly be altorod by stage lightine; it may also bo altered by the coetumer through a procese of epreying, peintine, and/or dyeing.

Color in contuming
Porhape the most lmportant and declelve varlable in oostualne le color. A costume color may bo modified according to tho urfaco aroa it covere and tho ojebollc algniflcance it ma for nan.

Ghmatinchatas of goler.-0Plgaont color has throe obaraoterletlca-ohue; saturatlon, or intenalty; and valuo. 18

Hue rofors to the rednese, bluoneao, greonnese, yollowe nose of a color.

Gaturation, or 1ntonalty, rofors to the purity of a color. the anount of oomplementary huo or gray it has in ite compoeltion.

Value rafora to the lightness or darkness of a color, the asount of white or black it hes mixed with 1t. A color of hlgh value (plnt) ia called a tlat; a color of low value (rod-blaot) is called a shaio.

18 Mif chard corson, pp. 12-15. Hoffnor, pp. 295-99.

Iach coature color can be claseblriod with a ralatively h1gh degree of accurioy by codifing lte hue, eaturntion, end velue. Fabric manufscturore and thoetro people in gomoral unfortunately do not 1上t auch s eyitam si cleselilcation. 19

Suciacs area of eqzer. -wifforont colorn, ss woll as other applied Ilnea, cond tc weah togethor unser atage lighting and Alatance. Coneoquontly, surface arose of color aruet be nodifisi and oimpliflod into large, clnarly derined mooze of lose pettorn and dotall varloty thail a poin plooc of clotho 14g. 20

Burbolis stanificance of solor.?1moobsota in nature are fraquontly eseoclatoh with thelr prodominant colorg tholr predosinant color, in tum, comes to aymbolize the prodominant guellsies of the object. Thus, bleck whe eseocleted with alcht and ma cose to bysbollze myatory and death, blue was escoclated with the aty and 200 and hot porac to myboliso ciabllity and coldnoss, sod va sesociatod with giro and hass cos to mysbolise wermth. phis natural color symbolise can bo uned to entince the goneral mood of the play and/or difforentlate and holp deaeribe cheractorm.?
${ }^{19}$ corson, pD. 16-17. Heffner, p. 362. 364. 20Gesesnor. 5p. 118, 399. Hofmer, pp. 429. 447. 21 Above. pp. 72-74.
${ }^{22}$ Gagsner, pp. 403-10. Heffner, pp. 430-31. young, pp. 123-33.

หeraer colore and grester intenalties generally ree Rect a more comic mood; cooler colors and lesser intonalites, a more tragio mood. ${ }^{23}$

A difforentiation in actors' costumen helpp offoct an audionce identiflcation of characters. If the costume difform onllation includer eymbollc use of color--an red for a more passional and ware character and blue for a more conctant and cool oharacter-ethe audience will more readly understand the charaoters' personalitioe. If, In addition, the principal charactore dominate bj greatest costuee difforontlation, the audience will more readlly recognise tholr olgnifloance.

Choosing ajebollc costume colore requires oholoe of colora which will give the dealred offoct under the etago 11ghting. ${ }^{24}$ OonerallJ speating, the more uncaturated oolore are the least affeotod bj atage lighting, a given color is enriched bj the canc oolor in lighting, and given color 10 dulled bj ite complementerj color in lighting. The exect offect of a given light upon a given costume 10 known, however, aly bj ectuel placomont of the fabric undor the given lightige.

## Produalos a ooptomen denlan

Informati on required for a costune design
${ }^{23}$ ganemer, p. 410. Nofmer, p. ${ }^{2}$ 431. Young. p. 123.
24gommen, pp. 4, 150. Dolean, p. 376. Geesner, pp. 398-99. 407-10. Hofmer, pp. 431-32. Young, pp. 137-46.

Bric caoulcement, --wlth a knowledge of the purposea of contuming and the waje to vary contumes in accordance with those purposes, the costume designer is roady to consider epeciflo requirenente of alven production.

Scciot reanlcemants. 25--From the seript, the costume deelgner will learn the apparent eeneral mood of the plas, time and place of the play ection, number of ecenes, number of characters, principal charactors, baelc nature of each character, costume changee and length of time for the changes, and epecific costure requirements dependent upon the action--such as a pockot for a prop. All of these fectore, howover, are subject to the production interpretation of the director, and no work on costuming design ehould begin unt 11 the director 10 consulted.

Diceotor's ceaulemente, ${ }^{26}$-arom the director, the interpretation of the production 1e learned (the basic style and mood to be enphaeized), as well es anj modiflcations of the ecrlpt itselfi time, place, aumber of charactere, emphaeis of cheractora, ceatum changes may be alterod. The director anj olso indicate a cholce of contume color, line, and/or fabric for any charactor(e).

Othare habhitand denign cequicnrente. 27--Productionel unanialty of emphaale le eapecially düpondent upon integration

25Gaener. pp. 39 3-94.
26Gaeaner. pp. 393-94, 397-98.
27Gasener, pp. 394, 397-99, 403.
of all the tochnioal areat with ono anothor and with tho direce tor' intorprotaticu. idonily, tho dimetor nooto jolntis whth all toobnlcal doalenors. Additionsl mubocoetinge of any anmber and group of tho above pereone will probebly bo nocese carji cortalniy there ohould bo an many mootinge are necose cary for merimum coorlinetod offort.

The coatume dealgn 1 . Proquontly uubject to modiflcstlon (oopocially in eolor ond otjlo) bj prior uot and light dealgnas elthough, at timen, cootuming may be conaldored of eoro prodoninant inportance than thor or both oot and lightIng. matever ite rolotivo predominant atatuo in tho tochni01 ercas, that will bo 1to poaition in timo order of doalgn. But, regandees of lte timo procedonce, contum doagn must be Intosrated with ell other tochnicel erees.

Makeup and cootumos havo alaller opociflc purposonon bolplay the eotor portray the chareotornaand choula bo oopoolally olosely intogratod in doalgo. Hand propertioe muot bo In harmany with the ooctures.
shonthar onoulematheocontumen ero ono of the goot Fuld parte of tho deskg, for thej move ovor a great aros of tho mot in an inflalto number of paftorns. Therofore, each contume ract bo coordinated with the othor costumes thet appoar on sege with it. Inowledge of the bloozed grouplage of ectore le escential to know which coeturge will be seon vith Ge anothor and in whet poeitioneobeelde one enother, in oppoaltion lo one anothor, and so on.

Fiouspent requicemente. ${ }^{28}$--The greateat equipront conaldoratione in ooatuming are the budget and the evelleble otock of cootume. Consideration of theae two factore will help doternine whether costumes will be bought, rented, borroved, made, or eeveral done in each of eeverel maje.

If costunoa are to be made, addltionel ooneldorations are neceseary: sewing room and equipment; djoing room and equipeent; weehing, 1 roning, and atoring facilltiee; and avellable persons to make the oostumes.

## Graphlo reoording of a costune dealgn

The recordias of the oostume deslgn requires a costume plot. cootume aketchos, and perhape additional diagrens and platee. The contuee plot thould include the name of each charector and a oostume description for hia in which thore is lioted the line, fabrio, and color of the balc garnent, the outer garment, footwear, and anj aoceseorlea for each ecene in the play in whioh there is a costune change. 29

Each coatuee when completed should have on it a tag etating the character to whom it belonge, the soene in which it belonge, and a brief deacription of $1 t .30$ 452-53.

28Gaaner, pp. 766-78. Heffnor, pp. 436-39, 441-48, 29нeffer, pp. 437-39. 300asener, p. 779. \&effner, p. 439.

Exeoution of a oostume design
Mnhod DS Erent120.--Costumes may be borrowed, rented, bought, or made. 31 Dotorminction of which mothod is beot deponde upon the type of cootume, type of production, budget, cosan of productions, and equipaont and faollitioe avallable. 32

If the budgot is sinianl, the beat (and perheps only) way to erecute the costuren is by borrowing. Uoing modern drees productione and the ectore" ons or borrowed clothing or ualng praductione sot in recent time and borrowing fron friends and poople in tho cormunity will bo mate inoxponelvo. The Suct that atage metoup and wear 1 e hard upon clothing w111 nato borrowlag diendrantageoue. Borrowing oostumes elso 11mite produotione to those which can be done in rooent settinges if costume are borpowed throughout aseson or sererel secsons of plase, accocary variets will be lecking.

Generally apecting, the next leat expenaive plen ie to sako coaturea. Initial coat will be groat, but the rouse and rentel of the costumeo w111 (over a poriod of time) Einials coot. Nith amsil budgot, the high initial coat mag Dereit making only a fow costume for ceoh production, but over a perlod of time auch a procese will help develop the most desirable oostume eltuatione-s etook of costumes for rental and reuce. Maing cootume hevian additional edventage

31Dolman, p. 375. Gessner, Pp. 119, 765. Heffner, pp. 420~23. 3RGeener, pp. 755-66.

In oducational theatre of mading avallable to the etudonte the practicel etudy of that area of theatre. There are come exceptione to the desirabllity of raking costumee-othe longth of time required, the cost of material, and/or the lack of reusabllity may mate rental, borrowing, or buylng of some costumee nort advantageouv.

Rental 10 generally the third least expenalve costume execution. For anj eiven show it is often leat expenalve to ront than to maire contumen, but, if the future progran 1a cosaldored, rontal ahould be used only if the budget, equipment. or time will not permit anking the coatumes or if the tjpes of cootumes are of little reuseble value or very difflcult to sake.

Although buylag contumes is gonorally the moot oxpen01ve and least cetlafactory was of costumine a Ehow, there are comp costume for whicb the wleest execution 1e purcheee-unlforas, old fur plooes, and so on. Plain cotton frocke may be agood purohase if their color and pattorn are not a dieadvantage undor atage conditions.

Maklag costumes requires a good cutting (to got the correot ellhouetto line), basting, fltting, cowing, prosalng, and tegeing. All of the other procesetra require flting. poselble eowling altoratione, preselng, and tagging.

Gostume chencril. - The contuce rehearsal 10 for the actor to bocome famllar with and loarn how to wear hlt costumea and for the deslener io determine any necessary changes for the

Snal costume dealgn. 33 all that can posalbly be done to ineure proper oolor, line, fabric, and fit in coetumee prior to contume reheareal (for example, a prior drees parade with accurate stage lighting and blocking) 1s usually moot important, for the costume rehearsal frequently comes olose to the date of production and little time 1 b allowed for adjuetsonto. 34 If any coatus 10 of a type particularly unfamillar to the actor, prior reheareal should aleo be ueed to help h1m learn how to wear hle costume properly and without 111 ease.

From the costume rohearsal through productione, a wardrobe mester ahould be avellable to check costumes out and ini seametresses ohould be avallable to take oare of costume emorgenoles (tears, lost buttons, and so on); and dressers should be avallable for any quick or difficult changes. 35

Deal zehercmp.--The objoctive of costumes during drese reheareal is accurate and integrated execution of the plnal costume dealgn as deternined by costume reheareal.

> Costuning Conoldoratione Appliod to gadipu bixx

The contuming for the odipun bex production at state College wee deelgred by and executed under the euperviel on of a noabor of the Speoch Departaent othor than the technical director. (dlareas of dealgn and ezecution may be delegated

[^15]to porsoas othor than the technlcal director; h1s sole function ay be at teohnioal coordinator.) The teohnical director'. knowledge of the cootuming for gadipun Bex comes from neceseary knowledge of the production at whole and fran weetinge with the coatuat dealgner.

## Informithor cequiced

## Baelc requiresonte

The cootume dealgner was acqualnted with the baelc requirenente of oostualng both froa her work leading to a H. A. in theatre oontuing and from her prior contume dealgnlag ae the 8tate College Theatre coatumer.
sorlpt requireneate
The ohoaen eorlpt 36 indicated the following apparent requi reanatas

1. The plaj'• generally traglc mood would indicate 0001 colore and a non-coalc dealgn.
2. The anclent Greek play could indl cate costunes pattorned after anclent Greek clothlng or anclent Greek contumes. 37
3. The rellgious igenlifiance of the play alght or alcht not be mphasised.
4. Unitj of time, place, and action ${ }^{38}$ alght indicate no or fov oootume changes.

[^16]5. The cant list would include pereone of varioue soclal statue-oroyalty, servants to tho rojalty, oldora, cltlzens, and so on-owho would require costume difforentlation. Dodipue would require the most marked differentlation.
6. The exact number of king"e attondante, quoon'a attendants, cltizone of Thobes, and Thoban oldors would have to be ascertalned fran the director.

## Director's requirenonts

Fred the director the following was learneds

1. The otyle of the play would not attoapt reallam.
2. The rellgious nature of the pley would be deompha--1sod.
3. The contuaes ohould reflect Grecian dress somowhat In allhouette Ilnes, but ahould be modified in accordance with the 1nterpretation of the production.
4. The costumes should be alaple and unornato.
5. Cool colors should prodoninato.
6. No coetume changes would be necoseary.
7. Stjllsed matoup and not maske woruld be usod.
8. Cothurni would not be used.
9. The chorus of Theban elders would corve as the Thoban oitlzons, tooi it would number elx to elght mon and olx to olght woen: all mon chould be droseed similarlj and all woen should be dreseod elmllarly.
10. There would be one palace offlclal.
11. "An attondant" would become two remale attendante.
12. Ienens, Antigone, and a boj to lead Tolroalas would all be ueed se indicated in the ecript, although they are lacking from the ecript's cast 11 st .
13. All other characters would be the same as indicated Co the ecript cast list.
14. Oodipus and Croon ahould have laurels donoting their regal atatuas Codipue' should doainato. (Consider thie ge1ntly with properties.)

Other techalcal area requiremonts

In Oedinu Ren, the set took superordinence over the oostumag in tine order of dealgn and predooinance of decision except in the area of color. The eot and cootume colore wore coordinately seleoted--blue-green, bluey blue-red, red-orange. The exact hue was to be dotormined bj costumea, for paint plgente are gonorelly more easily matchable to a givon color than are fabrio colorgeoeven with djelng.

Costumes would nocessarlly be coordinated with all othor teannical arese in etgle, but lighting and properties would be subordinate to costumes. Uee of nakeup rather than make would require caroful joint conalderation (by the makoup deel gnor and oostume designor) about halr stjlee.

Blooking requiremonts
The continuel prosence of the ohorue made it advantegeous for thes to be costumed in harmony with all other characters. Their blocked continuel (but slow) movewent on
various levele would indicate costumes which would nove readily and vortly with the actore.

Equipaont requiromenta
The cootume were to be made; some avallable cootumes could be reuseds the budget would permit purchace of materlale for oostumes for Oedlpue, Jooseta, and the women of the ohorus. The groateot equipment linitation would be on the sewing roon iteelfoen unventilated room approximetely ien feet by twolvo reet in elzo.

## Grephle moopding of the gontrma dender

## Producing the deelgn

## Hhtpoionl ming.-anclent Greek cloth1ng served ae

 the basis for the cootume dealgn; therefore, the balc clothing of anciont Groece39 w111 be 110ted and doecribed.Chitan. - The beic garment for both aen and woan wae a large rectencular plece of fabrlc called a chlton. The chiton wae worn next to the sin; was factened on each shoulder bj a flbula, almilar to a afoty plnj and was worn with or without a belt. Homen wore anklowlength chltone; men wore kneelength chitone except for ceremonial occaalone when they, too, wore ankle-length ones.

39 Chalmory, pp. 50, 52-53. Gaesner, pp. 397, 403. Carl zohler, yman Von Slohart, and Alexander E. Dallas, a H1Rtony of GOnfume (New Yorkg O. Howard watt, 1930), PP. 93. $95-96$, 99-100, 102, 105. K. Tumer wilcox. Mne vode in Coeturn (Hew York: Charles Scribner's sone, 194

The two baolc types of chitone wore Doric and Ionic. The Doric mee made of eoft wool with a eingle festening et each shoulder and was uavally belted. The Ionic was made of aheor ilnen or flne cotton (later ellk) and had sevoral flbulae along each an making the top fors 10080 eloever if the walet wore belted. Thore wes aleo a chort-sleaved Ionic chiton.

Hen of action frocuently faotened tholr chltons on only the left shouldor leaving the right arn freo.

Both tien and women eosetimes wore a second belt around the hipe.

Peplos.--For outer garmente, wonen frequently wore the peplos-a chawl-like plece of fabric fastoned on the ehoulders and draped from the ohoulder to the wasto.

H1eation.--An outer germent worn by both mon and wowon wes the hlmation-a fabric of approximately one and ono-half by three jerde in else draped about the figure, usually over but cone choulder.

Chlanye.e-A eocond type of outor garmont worn by the son wee the ohlageea rectangular fabric of approximately one by two jarde faetened at the ahoulder or in front with alasp. women's halr.--Womon's hatr was long and was worn collet1mes in a ohlgnon at the back of the ffeck, oometimes coverod by a floating voil, somotimeo with volle wound in 1t, somotimes in a caul, or net.

Lines and fabrlc.o-The ellhouotto of anclont Grook olothing was $1008 e$ and unharpering and did not difior atone
-conomic or soolal classes. Anciont Greek clothing came from soft, heavj meteriale with rich full drape. Applied line-rioh bordere of weaving and eabroldery--diffored greatly and was a partial indicator of economic and social statue. The texture of all Greek olothing wae relatively dulls although, difforence in fabric texture was a partial indicator of difforence in social and econole etatue.

Hinforlcel applichtien. -aAll costumes wore modifleations of the besic ancient Groek clothing.
women of the chorus wore modifled, unbelted Doric oh1tons. The eodiflcetions were (1) added fullnese; (2) attached drape in front; (3) attached train in the back; (4) nylon ohlffon, not wool, fabrlci and (5) colore coordinated with the production-otinte of blue-green, blue, blue-red, and pink-brown. The added fullneas, drape, and train, as woll as the soft, light fabric could be utilized advantageouely in the danoellye, blooked movements of the chorus. The added drape and traln would not be too ounbersome, for the chorue eovesente would be elow. The cooler oolore would reflect the tragio nood of the pley. The naturally ehort helr atyles of many of the women were oopocaled in chignone notted in enoode (elallar to a caul) the color of thelr costumes.

Men of the chorus wore a chort-sleeved, Birdled, kneelongth, modified Ionic ohlton. The nodffications were (1) lese fullnese, (2) denin pabrlc, (3) colore of the production-aedl ua values of blue, blue-grenn, and green-blue-greon and
sbades of blue-greon. The reduced fullnoas, deeper color values, and heavior Pabric wore more masculine.

The boy to lead Telresias was contumed as the man of the chorus.

The palace offlcial wae costumed elmilarly to the chorus men; h1e costune diffored only to indicate h1e socisl statuchad tris, wee an uneaturated shede of maroon, and included a headbend.

Telrealas wore an ankle length, glrdied ohlton of a brown shadco-presumably the mouraing color of ancient oreece. The ohlton wae modifled to include long, full sleoves eymbollc of h1s role as prophet.

The priest was costured ofimlarly to the mon of the chorusi, his chiton difforentlated hin from them by its color, sedium grayb 1 te greator fullnese; 1 ts ankle-lengths and 1 te long, loose lomle-llte eleeves--all eymbollcally indlcative of his rellgious role.

The shophord was also costuned elallarly to the men of the chorva. H1E ohiton diffored only in color (gray) and longth (ankle). H1e hlmetion-a shade of green burlap fabricwae indicative of his outdoor llolihood and soolal etatue.

The messongor was costumed as the chorus men excopt that he had a ohlanye-a brown obade in color and denia in Sabric.

The ettendants wore a modiflcetion of the basic chorue womon cestures. Mosliflcation included ili 10 ss fuilness, (2)
no attaohed drape or train, and (3) taffota fabric. The attendante were 1 oo difforentlated by wearing aylon ohlffon poplo and flowing volls at the back of the head.

The joung daughtere of Oedlpus and Jooanta wore costuned olmilarly to the attendantof costumen wore of allghtly doeper oolor values and croes tied in the front; there were no peplos or helr accescorles.

Jocasta, as queen, was the most strongly difforentlated vonan. Fler chlton wac of allver and plnt lamo; her overgare nent was a modifled himatlon of redebronse satln fastened at both ohoulders and belted. She wore a/headband; her headband, himation, and chiton were all richly trimmed.

Creon' ohlton difforentlated hle fros the chorus men by greater fullnese, rabric richnese and color (whlte terry 0loth), and trin. In addition, he wore a gold corduroy ohlamy and a green laurol.

Becauce Oddpus wao the character of centrel interest, h1s costume oolora, richness, and decoration were of greatest difforentlation. H1e anklo-longth ohlton of deop bronse e11k wae factencd on the plght ohoulder alono; hle modifled, boltod hlmation of white torry oloth hung over the left ohoulder alone. R1eh trin and a gold laurel conploted hfie costume.

Orerall minimisation of jewelry, decoration, and trim was purposely not of hletorlcal accuraey but coordinated with the produotioncl olaplioity.

Fiecording the deslen
The coetuming deaign for findpun Bex inoluded the cootume plot ad akotches. The eketches are nolther avallable nar roproducmble for this thesis, but the plot and fle plates sorve at graphlc recording of the dealgn.

In order to make the eraphic rocordink more conpact, a conclatent cot of aymbols and abbreviatione is used.

Abbroxieilons.-anach costume 1e 11 sted after the charaotorfe) for whom it was mede; each charactor's name is abbreviated.

Code for charactor namosd
Nin-men of the chorue
Ni-ewolien of the chorue
Buaboy to latd Telreales
PO-palaoe offlcial
T-Telresiae
Popriest
8-enhepherd
h--soasonger
lim-slrot attendant
2A--second attondant
I--I nlient
A-Antigare
j-jocente
c-croan
Oo-Dodipua
83. Etande for soft andale; Tab., for fabrioi Col., for oolor;

Brze., for brongel klte. for Rato.
Coloci, --Colore are lleted accorthing to hue and ralue.
Value 1e designated frote one to twolve; one 1s the lightest tint, twolve 10 the deopost ahade. hue is doalgnated by letter. silver and gold colors are writton in full.

Code for color hue:
Fhe-red Bo-blue
O--orange Bro-brom
G-agreen H-ansutrele fron white to black
Elniancoln eddition to Plates IIf through VII, Platoe
 costumos.

## Execution of the costume desisn

Naring the costunea
All costumes were olther aade or altored from the avallable stook of costumes. The dealgner helped in cutting; otudent help dif most of the eowing; flttinge wore arrenged for each caot member, and all costumes wore tagged.

## Contume rebearsel

Costune rohearsal indicated nocessity for altering some houlines and footwoars but fabrlo, allhouotto lino, and color were not altered for the production.

The cootuge otaff hung all mon'o costumes on a rolling rack which they took to the mon' dressing room oach night trom costume rehearsal through performances. The the prom cedure was used for women's costumes. The costume staff was also avallable to asist in any necesmaty costume repalre or dreselng probleme.

Drese reheareal
No furtkeri altematione were made in the costume dealgn
for the production.

FIMAL COsTUMTRO LEETUK FOR UPDITUS REX

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { + } \\ & \stackrel{\pi}{5} \end{aligned}$ | Basic geresat－－chiton |  |  | Overgarment |  |  | Fosdgear |  |  | 5880000 | 家边 | 䢗 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Line | Color | Pab． | Latre | Col． | Fat． | Inne | Col． | Pob． |  |  |  |
| Mn． | Giraled． short－ cleevea． knee－ longth． unfall | 85 <br> B05 <br> 8005 <br> BCG | Deala | None |  |  | fone |  |  | 88. | IT | Mone |
| \％． | Unglrdied． extre fullneea． added drape trein | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{BOZ} \\ & \mathrm{nZ} \\ & \mathrm{RBE} \\ & \mathrm{BBR} \end{aligned}$ | lislon oinlr－ fon | Mone |  |  | 日et． or enood | 802 <br> 82 <br> BR2 <br> RER2 | 日glon chif－ ron | 88. | III | Mone |
| $E$. | he Ma． | 85 | Denim | 8080 |  |  | Sone |  |  | lione | IV | None |
| 350. | As Ma． | BR10 | Donde | Pone |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Head- } \\ & \text { bund } \end{aligned}$ |  |  | 83. | IV | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Bor- } \\ & \text { dore } \end{aligned}$ |
| $t$. | $\begin{aligned} & \text { olrdied. } \\ & \text { antele- } \\ & \text { leagth, } \\ & \text { fall; } \\ & \text { lonse full } \\ & \text { lueves } \end{aligned}$ | Brlo | Denia | None |  |  | \％ono |  |  | Mono | IV | 112 <br> ola－ <br> Ju8 <br> down <br> front |
| ${ }^{5}$ | Ankle－ <br> leasta． 8u11：long －leeres | 4 | Denta | Rone |  |  | Sone |  |  | 88. |  | None |




PLATE III
Basic costume for men and women of the chorus.


PLATE IV
Basic men's costume modified for the boj, palace official, and Teiresias.

.

PLATE V
Basic men's costume modified for the shepherd and messenger.


PLATE VI
Basic women's costume modified for the attendants.


## CHAPTEE VI

## DESIGNING AND EXECUTING THE LXGHTING

## TABLE OF CONTENTS FOG CHAPTE VI

Part 1. Genaral Considerations in Lighting Three variables of lighting
Quantity in lighting ..... 166
Definition and measure of quantityControl of quantity
Color in lighting ..... 169Definition and measure of colorControl of color
Distribution in 1ighting ..... 175Definition of aistributionControl of alatribution
Two kinde of 111 unination
General 111 umination ..... 179Definition and purposeControl of general 111 uminstion
Epecif1c 111umins 21 on ..... 280
Defindtion and purponeControl of specific illumination
Producing a 21 ghting design
Information required for a design ..... 182
Basic requiremente
Seript requirementeDirector's requirement:Other technical design requirementsBlocking requirementsEquipment requirements
Graphic recording of a lighting deeign ..... lage ..... 185
Exocution of lighting season ..... 186
Inctalling equipmentLighting rohearaslDrese rohesreal
Part 2. L1ghting Considerations Applied to Gedipun Eex
Information required for the lighting dealgn
Bealc requirements ..... 187
Soript requiroments ..... 187
Director' requiremente ..... 190
Other technical dosign requiremente ..... 192
sot doelgnCostuno designMakoup doelgnPropertios designsound offects design
Blocking roquiroments ..... 194
Kquipsent requirements ..... 294
Dlamera avallableInetrumonte avallableAddltional equipment avallableMoney avallable
Graphlc rocording of the lighting design
Producing the denign ..... 196
Goneral 1llumination
Chorus llluminationPalace doors 111 uminationElind entrance 1llumination
Sky illumination
Recording the deelgn ..... 203
Page
Execution of the lighting design
Instelling the equipeent ..... 226
Mounting rohearsale ..... 227
Drose rohearsal ..... 229

## BODY BOL CHAPTEN VI

## General Conalderations in Ilghting

## 

The primary purpose of lighting, too, 10 to alo in proeenting tho play. And, inco thoro aro $n 0$ manj faotore In lighting that can be verlod, lighting can become on of tho noot rlexible, 1mportant, and exproesivo parts of a plaj.? On the other hand, the gront number and oomplexitj of tho verlable ractore in lighting can be a dieadvantagekotho - aect effect of a partlcular plece of lighting mas not be renon excopt bj actual production of 1 ti soee faotorn (oleon BrioltJo color, 11 ghting 1notrunonts) are froquently poorlj maderatood. for etudy of then can becone complex. Howorer. the atudj of lightine need not become barfingly complex, and - gonoral undoratanding of lighting control can lead to plaj productions of grater value for the techniclane, actoro, and andence. 4 the techni olan who underetente lighting one trol can acoomplioh all pooulble offooto of artiflelal lighting
$1_{\text {Bowan. pp. 154-61. Oanoner. pp. 218, } 120 .}$ hoffner. p. 428.

2Boman, p. 1. Lolman, pp. 317. 340. Filederich, PP. 54-55. Gaaener, pp. 107-17. 781-62.
$3_{\text {Priederlch, p. 54. Gasener, " } \mathrm{pp} \text {. 788-89. }}$
${ }^{4}$ Gaenser, p. 783. Hefraer, p. 372.
by changlas the three goneral controllable, or varlable, retore in l1ghtigg--quentity, color, and di etribution. 5

## Quantity in lighting

Definlition and remure of guanilitx. - The quantity of light refore to the agount of light prosent on a given aroa. By use of a photcoleotric coll, light quantity could by maeured in lumene per equere meter for any given plece on the atago. 6 Howorer, for the light doalgnor, an approximation of the quantity of light ie aufflcient for deciding whether Where will be the proper asount of llght for the play, for othor not-caslly-calculativo varlablee (for oxample, sovecant of astore whose satoup, costuses, and hand prope act as llght roflootora) conatantly change the quantlity of light an alvon stage area. The light deslener can approximete the quantlty of llght by coneldoring the number of lampe of a elven wattage directed fron a given typo of lastruent which 1e placed at a givon diotance fram the 111 uninated surface and coataline a giron color media. (Thle approximation will beconie nere meaninçl to the reador as the rost of the chaptor 10 med.) By 1 neuring nore than aufficiont 11 ght in the light cosis. the propor quantity can be eocured during technical

58owean, pp. 1-3. Trloderloh, P. 54. Gamanor, DP. 400-10. Hormer, pp. 324-26.

6rrancla Vooton spare and Mark W. zomanaky, Unirace
 3950), p. 746. Gaeanor, pp. 784-85.
rehoarsale by eotting the light dimeore at the correct level. 7

Conticol of guanきdiz. --Control of llght quantity (as woll as color and distribution) is most offectivoly done by graduelly dimeing lampe in and out, 8 for a gradusl change in light 18 less perooptible and tiring for the human oye than 1s a eudden ohange. 9 There are numorous types of lightlag control boende with dimaers of varlous kinde-reactance, eutotrensformer, resistance. The most sultable type of board for any theatre depende upon the typee of productione given by that theatre, the theatre budget, the stage, other lighting equipaont, the technicians using the lighting equipeont, and other faotors pecullar to the glven theatre. Each theatre should consider ecquirlng or altering 1 te control ejetem only aftor oxamination of all the relovant factors by an expert in thentre lighting. There ere, however, eoveral generel consideratione in ecquiring or altering a lighting control boand for any thoatre. 10

1. A calecman cannot be considered a theatre lighting expert, for he will not know a given theatre nor all

7 Gasener. p. 790.
8 Bowaen, p. 108. Friedor1 ch, pp. 54-55. Gacener, pp. 365~66. Heffner, p. 383.
$9_{\text {Hermer, p. } 325 . ~}^{\text {Her }}$
10Dolman, pp. 336-37. Gasanor, pp. 115, 786-88, 794, 805-806. Hormer, pp. 374-97.
satee and kinda of control equipment, and h1e primary purpoee Le to eell hia produot.
2. The lioot flexible lighting control has sone means of connecting any outlet or number of outlete (to which the lighting inetrumente are connected) to any dimeer and awitoh on the llghting control board.
3. Soae meane of later adding to the control board 10 Prequently dealrable.
4. Switches should be allent in operations toggle ewltchee are often noley.
5. Dimmore of difforent wattages alay be deelrablef total ourrent capacity ohould be sufficiont.
6. Location of the control board demande two oonaldoratione. Firat, the size of the control board (including apcoaaary epace bohind it for repalra and ventilation and opace for adding to the bourd if dealred) muet be known. Second, a olear line of vielon of the wole aoting area by the control beard oporator(s) 1 e greatly dealrable and best achieved by plaing the control board at the rear of the auditorlum elther ea the maln floor or on a low balcony.
7. The control panel aust be absolutely safo; no hot, or live, torninal oonneotione should be near control awitohes.

If no light dimelng oystom ia ievallable, lighting oontrel becomes relatively complicated and inflexible. More light cen be eoquired by ueling aore lampe, thy using lampe of a greator wattage, by using more offlciont lighting instruaonta, by placing

Inatrumenta olocer to the acting aroa, or by ualng color aodia of lowor coturation. Manlpulation of tho abovo liet of rariablec cas $\mathcal{E}$ ve at quantlty of 11 ght howoror, gradual change 1n that aot 11 cht quentity (ae woll as color and dietribution) 1. 1apoosible. Tho anly aoan of varying light quentity in a non-dlmble 11ght ogatom, turning lasps on or off, oroatoc a suddon change. Slnce offoctivo and flexible lighting control 10 1mpooalble without moano for diang tho lighto, heviag a dinalag ejatom hould be one of the baalo considerationa of the play producer. 11

## Color in 11ghting

Dectintion and menure of alotoc.-aColor refore to tho threofold oharaoterlotion of light which affoot the rotina of tho hum oseo-huo, saturation, and bri111anco. 12 Huo pofora to the dosinant wavo longth of a olor. It is what - gonorally moan $1 f$ wo doccribo aonothing ac rod, jollon. crage, bluo.

Saturation rofora to the purity of a color, tho anount of a conplomentary hue it has in ite composition. mite 12cht 1s oapletoly uncaturatod; bluo liget complotely free from yellow llght is completely matated, or pure, blues

112omar, P. 108. Dolmar, pp. 355. 369. Frledorlch, p. 54.

12 bownan, p. 92. Geennor, p. 213. Hoffner, pp. 363-64. soars. pp. 744,757.
blue light with erno yollow in it is only partially saturatod, or plele blue.

Brillianoe refers to the amount of lllumination on the surface of color; a color of low brllliance is oalled a shade,

In atagecroft there io no univeraally applicable ejotos of color dealgmation in oolor media for lighting, paint plgment, costume meterlale, or mekoup. 13 Consequently, there can be great confuaion in deolgning unlobe the dealgnor usee actuel samplee of the oolor or a aystenatized color dealgnetion for hle doalgning.
contrel of solox.--Color in lighting 10 controlled by the color medius and the eothod of color mixing-additive or subtrective. ${ }^{14}$ Lighting color modia--glees, lamp dip, geletino, cellophane, olnabex ${ }^{15}$--all have unlque usos based upon thelr epeolflo properties. ${ }^{16}$ Soe rable 9 on the following page for a tabular lioting of the properties of each color modium. All aydis reduce the quantity of llght. Prisary
${ }^{13}{ }_{\text {Bowman, pp. }}$ 92, 99. Corson, pp. 16-17. Hoffnor, pp. 362. 364.

14pmederich, p. 55. Gaasner, p. 114. Herrnor, pp. 364-67.

15manufactured bs Paranount interprise0, 242. 1800t 27th streot, Now York 1, How Yorls.

16 Bowmen, pp. 101-102. Dolman, pp. 338, 344-46. Gacenor. Pp. 114, 364, 795, 802, 80~, Hoffner, pp. 367-69.

TAZ®E 9
PIROPEITIER ANL USETULFIESS OF COLOR ZALDIA

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { color } \\ & \text { cod2 } 2 \text { m } \end{aligned}$ | G1ase | Clnabex | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Gella- } \\ & \text { tine } \end{aligned}$ | Collo phane | Lamp dlp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Roact1 on so heat | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Hoat- } \\ & \text { rosictant } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Affected } \\ & \text { slightly } \end{aligned}$ | Affoctod readilj | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Affocted } \\ & \text { readily } \end{aligned}$ | Burne oxs readily |
| ```Nomotion CO molature``` | Mo1sturepoeletant | Affectod -l1ghtly | isffected roadll | Affected sonowhat | Afrectod <br> ellghtlJ |
| loaotion to fading | सOnfading | Nearly nonsading | Fadee <br> readily | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Fades } \\ & \text { roadlly } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Noarly } \\ & \text { non-fading } \end{aligned}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Bootpal } \\ & \text { purlty } \end{aligned}$ | OOOd | Good | Poor | Poor | Fair |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { of } \\ & \text { of } \end{aligned}$ | Few: include prlearlos | Grest varioty | Great varlety | Sov | Fews includes primarloo |
| Woohand asl atrongth | Txcellent; brearable | Good | Poor | Ea12 |  |
| Cose | InIt1s. Breat; long run call | Initial. <br> acdium; <br> lons pun anell | ```Initial. amel1; long run modlum``` | ```In1と1al. 0ne11: long run nod1u*``` | In1t1el。 -a 11 ; <br> long run groat |
| C180 and ahape | Rormanont: uoully round | Cutable: flts anj plane aurface | Cutable: fte asJ plane ourface | Cutable: f1te any plane surface | applied to bulb |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { cozerel } \\ & \text { velilty } \end{aligned}$ | Boot and choapest $1 f$ colore 4 shapes aro rlght | Boot slex1ble color modiun | Cinabex 1: bettor | ```Clnaboz 1% botter``` | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Gonerally } \\ & \text { unaet18 } \\ & \text { factory } \end{aligned}$ |

color media tranait only a rection of the 11ghts unsaturatod color mtidis trmanit coneldorably moro. 17

Additivo alxing of color 1s the production of a givon color of light by the addition of two or more colorn. 18 Thate light can be produced by addine togother ell the colore of tho epoctmin or by adding tozother the three light primare 100--aturatfd rod, grean, and blue. 19 Purthemore, any color can be produced by adding the throe primerioe in Ferlous amounts. 20 for examples red and green alve jellowi blue and groon gire bluegroen; rod, jollow, and blue (yellow ie rod and groen) givo pint, or partially asturatod roa. stripo 11ghts frequontly uce a procese of additive mixing to produce ang deolred color. The color 1 s changed by changing the rolative emounte of the primary colore, each of which ie varied bs connection to tit own dimmer and ewitch. Additive mining of colorg 1s also froquontly usod in spotilghting if two 11shting inctrunonts with difforont color modie aro focueod on tho samo ntage arca.

17gasenor, p. 114. Heffner, p. 369.
18yowaan, pp. 98-99. Dolaan p. 341. Gasenor, pp. 113-14, 785-86. Hoffnor, p. 364. Boara, p. 758.

19Boman, pp. 95-97. Corron, p. 27. Lolman, p. 341. Priederich, p. 56. Gsesnor, pp. 364, 285-86. herfner, p. 364. Scaro, p. 759.

20yowen, p. 97. Coreon, p. 27. Herrnor, pp. 364-67. 8eare, p. 759.

Any color medium permite only the light raye corrseponding to 1 te color to be tranemitted through 1t; the renalnder of the apectrum 10 absorbed. If, for example, white 11ght ${ }^{21}$ falls on a eetureted blue eedium, only blue light can be trancaltted. If a caturated red medium 10 then placed in the path of the blue light, no light will paee through the red eediun, for the red permite only red light to be transnitted, and the blue medium has already absorbed the red 11ght raja. Subtractive nizing of lighting 1s based upon this principlo 22 and ia constantly utilised in theatre, for a colored nedium 1e generally placed before any lamp in order Bo tranemit e given colorn-thet of the color mediun. Other uses are made of subtractive light mixing, and one example nay corve at an indication of the soope of oubtractive mixIng problenge-peasing white light through two color media of eccondary oolora w1ll produce the primary color conmon to both. If, for instance, white light is paseed firat through a blue-green color medium and then through a yellow one, green alone w1ll be tranamitted through both. Blue-groen, blue, and green will peae through the blue-green color mediums yellow, red, and green can paes through the yellow mediumseo, ereen alone will pafs through both color media.

[^17]Just as tranealesion of 11 ght 1e eolective, eo 10 roflection of light eelective. Consequently, the colors of econory, costumes, makoup, and properties w1ll be deternined not only by the colore of thelr plgmente, but also by the colore of llght thet are reflected and/or abeorbed by them. ${ }^{23}$ San oxamplea of thie princlple in practice may indicate the complextty of problese that arise from $1 t^{24}$

1. $\Delta$ light of primary color focueed on the surface of another prinary color glves a gray or black appearance. If. for inotance, saturated red llght wore to fall on a eaturated blue eurfece, all the llght would be absorbed, and the blue aurface would appear Dlack or graj.
2. A light of secondary color focused on the aurface of a primary color of which the surface 1 e partially compoed given the primary color. If, for inatance, a yollow light (red and green) falls on agreen surface, the eurface will appear Ereen: it wlll reflect the green light end sbeorb the red.
3. A light of prlaary color focused on the surface of a secondary color composed partially of the primary givee the primary color. If, for inatance, a rod light falle on a eagenta (rod and blue) surface, the surface will appear rodi 18 will reflect the red 11 ght and have no blue raye to reflect.

23 Bowman, pp. 99-101. Coreon, pp. 26-32. Friederioh, PP. 54-55. Gasenor, p. 114.
${ }^{24}$ Dolman, pp. 342-45. vacener, pp. 114, 786. Hioffnor, PP. 367, 369-72.

Coneequently, a thorough undoratanding of aubtractive Elxing is escential for deeigning and executing a desired -ffoct in sconory, cootumes, properties, makoup, and lighting. 25 Distribution in lighting

Dectapition of diptribution. --The diatribution of 11ght refors to the way in which light of any quantity and color 10 apread on a etage area from a glven direction in order to produce a given compoeition of light.

## conticol of disfedbution. - -The alstribution of light

 1a generally controlled by dimming in and out lampe housed In one or more of the numerous kinde of lighting instrumente. The mank lighting inetrumente can be grouped genorallj Into flve olaseifloatione-o 1 loodlighte, epotlighte, bean projsctors, etriplighte, and apecial instrumonts. 26 Each inetrument can be described in terme of 1 tes apeolflc housing, tjpe of lene and focus, bean edge, lanp elze, length of throw, and officiency.Floodlighte. $-\infty$ Floodlighte are 11 ghting inatmumente whose large open unlenced fronts are reaponsible for the inotrumenta' ohlof adrantage (good efflciency) ae woll at

25, -rioh, p. 54. Gesoner, p. 114. Hoffier, pp. 369-72.

26 Bomang. pp. 56-71. Eolman, pp. 336-39. 357. Gasener. pp. 107-108, 112-13, 788, 791-805. Hofrner, pp. 339-60. Porfection Lighting Co,f Inc. Capitol. Stage L1ehting Apparetue (Catalog No. 25; Hillelde, Now Joreeys Publiehors Ontnown, [2956]). pp. 20-42, 46-48, 52-59.
thoir chief dieadvantage (a diffuce bean that cannot be focused). Floodlighte generally earry frais 500 to 1000 wett lamps, produov a modlum or coft edge boan, and are more useful for ohort or medium leneth throwa longor throw 10 poselble, but as the length of beam increases the width and holght of the bean inorease greatly and the intenalty of the light diminiohee greatly. The verious kinde of floodighte include ollvottee, hanging Moodlighte, bunch lighte, and -coup light..

1. An ollvotto is roctangular in shape and gonorally weos a 1000 watt lanp; howover it 10 capable of uaing 300 to 1500 watt lampe.
2. A hanging floodight io rectangular in ohape and usea a 500 to 1000 matt lapp.
3. A bunch light is rectongular in shape and useo 10 to 12 lampe of 100 vate or leas.
4. A scoup light 1e ellipsoldal or parabolic in shape and uses a 40 to 1000 or more watt lamp depending upon the -coup ize.

8potl1ghte.--Spotlighte are instruments which onclose within a hood, a focuelng ellde holding a lap and reflector. The light 1s peraltted to leave the inetrument only through the loneed opening. The variou kinte of opotlightse-genoral, Preanol, ellfpeoldal, baby, and follow-all have the advantage of a focusable, concentrated beaw. 'la oh hae additional unique advantages and disadrantages.

1. The general epotlight hey plano-convex lene, produces a hand edge bean, carriee a lamp of 500 to 2000 vatte, 1 e dealgned for ohort or medium throwe, and haa an efflciency of three to twenty-flve percent. AB additionel edventege of thls epot 10 ite herd edge beams 1 te chief dieadrantage 1 egreat inefficiency.
2. The Freenel epotllght has a freonel type lene, produces a sort edge bean, carrise a lamp of 500 to 1000 weite (some nodele are desiged to carry 2000 to 5000 watte), 10 designed for short or medium dietanoes, and has an offlelenoy of up to flfty percont. Increaced offloloney is an advantages the coft dge bean can be diexdvantageous.
3. The ellfpoidal apotllght has a plano-convex leno, produces a nedium or hard edge beam, carriee a lamp of 500 to 1000 wette, 1 e especially ueeful for long throwe, and hae en offlcienoj of eoventy-flve percent. Length of throw and offlolenos are lte additional eseote.
4. A babj epotllght 1e almilar to a general or a Preanel apotlight and diffore only in that ite hood 10 emallor and 1te lamp 1e 500 watte or lees. It 1e used where ameller hood or lesesp wattage 10 deelrable.
5. The follow epot frequently has two planoeconvex and one priematic lens, producee a hime edge bean, carrles a lamp of 1000 to 1500 ratte, 1 e deelgned for long throwe, and varlee in efficiency according tos design. The arc fol-o low opot throws a beam of greateot longth and intenalty but
hae the dieadrenteges of boinc not dimeble (because it op oratoe without a lampl and very noisy in operation.
striplighte.-obtriplighto are 11ghting inotmmente in which several lape aro placed in a straight ine in a trougho 12te houelngt footlighte and borderlights are of thie gonoral tjpe. striplights vary a groat deal in construction, but the boet ones have individual reflectors of a parabolicoophorical ohapo, conthin glese roundels for color media, and heve alue elnu reflectore with elther regular or diffuce reflecting vurfeco. Striplighte aro non-focucable, havo no loneos, produce a oft odge beam, carry 40 to 200 watt lamps, aro dosignod for ahort or modium longth throwe, and havo good offioloney in the boet inetrumente. They are most useful for goneral 111 unimation or for producing other light of an - onon diotribution and quantity.

Bean projectorm.-e8eaz projectorseot eort of croce botwoon opotlighte and Noodlighta-ohavo large open loncoloee fronte but aro onowhat focueable by moroment of the lamp and call front blinder. TheJ prosuce concentrated, narrow boan of light ourroumdod bj a boan of leoser concontration, carry a lanp of 1000 to 2000 watte, and are most useful for chort or mediun length throwes thes are capablo of throling - otrang and lons boom. but tho diametor of the boan inoreaces greatly with the lengthened throw.

Spocial 1notrumonto.--3pecial. 21ghting instrumonte can be ueod to produce the effect of cloude, flames, onow,
wavee, sconery, and other offecta in elther stationary or noring form. If a etationary effect is desired, a lena projection will create a clcar, detalled, sharply focused laages a linnebach projector cen be used to create an 1mage of lese detall and sharpsese. If a moving offect is desired, a colopticon can be used. In addition to lene projectora, 11nnebach projectors, and sclopticons, a light technician can utillse any comblnation of instrumonte, 1ris, wask, funnele, hoode, color wheele, freming shutters, and ans other objoot in croating any offect he deolros--fire, lichtniat. swankling stare, and so on. ${ }^{27}$

## Tro kinde of 111 uminationogeneral and specif1e

## Goneral illuaination

## 

Generel illumination 10 ohadowlen: light which has ao 1 te purpose enabling the audience to see comfortably and clearly everjehing that it 1 e intended to eee. 29
conicol of Beancal 1ilumination.--Gonoral 11lumination 1e ueually evenly and constantly distributed throughout

27 Bonman, pp. 64-66, 127-40. Gaeener, pp. 568-69. Hoffiner, pp. 353-58. Porfoction Lighting Co. Inc.. pp. 46-48. 28 hioffner, pp. 324, 331.
29вowean, pp. 3-4, 15, 64. Gasener, pp. 782, 790. Hosmor, p. 327.
the etage area. 30 The quantity and color of the light are eurally varieds elthough they, too, are even throughout the atage area at any given moment. The coastant distribution 1s usually aohlered by striplights (footllghts light the otage area from below at light reflected from the ground or floor would normally do, border 11 ghts 11 ght from above the acting area) and beam lighte (beam lights light from an angle ebove and et oane distance in front of the acting area and ueually ald apeciflc lllumination, aleo). Color 1e genorally varled by additive mixing of the primaries in varlous propor 1100. . It 19 usually desirable to utllize the oolor of general 1llumination to ald specifio 111 unination in setting the eood of the play. For examples, a party scene might call for a partially eaturated yellow or red hue; a etone cell might call for a ohade of blue. Quantity of general lllualnation 1s evelly controlled by dimalng lamps in or out. Again, veri-- ty and contral 18 ucent in alding speciflc lllumination. For example, it may be dealreble to vary the quantity of general 1llmination so thet a festive scene hee much general 1llumimation and another scene has little or none during the production of a ellhouette.

Spectrio lllumination
Definition and gucrone of apecific 121 umimition. $-\cdots$ Apeciflc lllumination is form-roveallng or ohadow-producing
$30_{\text {Bowman, pp. 15, 64. Gasener, p. 570. Herfner, p. } 331 .}$
light and has ae 1te purpose to onhance the credibility of the pley by revealing form, approximeting reellty, and/or onhanciag the emotional and paychological offoote of the play.
 alnation, verioty of dietribution, color, and quantity are all neceseary to reveal form, approximete reallty, and/or Omance emotional and peychological effecte of the pley. 31 The evon dietribution froe general llluainetion eakes ecenery, ectore, prope, the whole etege appear twondieencional and unIntereoting, for the level of 1llumination on overything 10 the same. Speciflc 111uaination 1e, therefore, necescary to oreate highlighte, chadowe, veriety or compoeltion, and threo-dimenolonallon.

Caeting one hue of light on an object from one alde and another hue frow the other ide helps creete the effect of three dimenelonel form. Highlighting one area by increaelag the quantity of light in it plus ohadowing another by reducing the quantity of light in it aleo etreagthene the oceposition of the etage plcture. sean lighte frequently corve both of the above functione in addition to belng utillsable for general lllumination.

Neturalletic eccuracy is eeldom necescary in otago llghting, but an approximation of reaillty is usuelly moot

[^18]doolrables ounlight ohould be of a varmer hue than moonlights houcohold lagpe ohould bo 11ghtod at alght.

5aotlomal and pajchological offecte can be onhanced by opocif10 1llualaation in many vaysi listing a fow oxamplo aay belp clarify thio otatoant. The quantity of light dosirablo for a myoterioue offoct 1s leas than thet doelrable for a footive effect. Seelng the ohadow of a nooee may be more offoctive than actually soolng the noose. Color may holghton -ffoct in two general waje. 32 Flrot. werm colore and higher latenaltleo can be ueed for conedyi cool colore and lover 1atenaltioe can be used for tragedy. Socond, color oymbollen, In whloh a color may bocomo the eymbol for somethlng ol ue (rod may aybol1se flre, black may oyabol1ze death, groon may oye bol1se envy), cas be uced. Certalnly color oymbolisin can beconc 00 oubtilo and involvod that obscurity alone romalno for the audience, but offective conolderation of oolor cen ald groetly in prosentation of a play. 33

Any equlpmont may be ueod in any manor to produce a Biven doeired effoct in apecific illumination.

## Producing a 1 isht dealsn

Information requinod
for a llght design

32 Bowan, pp. 3, 6-7, 91-92. Dolman, pp. 345-47. Frlederlch, pp. 109-11. Gasener, p. 108. Heffner, pp. 325-26.

33colman, p. 345. Frlodorioh, pp. 109-11. Hermer, p. 326.

Bnalc copulementhe-osnowledge of the varlable and Elado of 12 chting and thoir purpooe and control 10 the baic requiroment of the 11 ght doelgner. But tho actual produce tlon of a light design for a spoolfic ohow requires much additionel 2nformation.

Gopiot coquicament.e-mirat, the 11 ght doelgnor muot etudy the ecript oarefully, thinking oopecially in torno of 11ghting. 34 Often $1 t$ is ueful to note and list the apperent besic licht ohanges at this tine. Or the dosigner may wait For thle task unt1l aftor the next otepeoconsulting the Alroctor.

Dhenotoc'n ceaulcemontio-Seconde the 11ght dealgner rust consult the diroctor. 35 From the director he will loarn viat the partlcular approach to the plaj vill beo-(tho atyle of the show and the basic mood) as well as any speciflc lightIng ooneiderations the director vante (opecial lighting effecte, Given colore, and 00 ond.
othac tuchniank danien caquicamonte. - Thiva, the 11 cht dealgner must ocnoult the other technical designere. 36 It 1s nost ueoral for all toohnlcal deolgnere to meot jolntly-o

34Bowan. p. 9. Gacanor, p. 377. Horinor, p. 399. 35Boman, p. 10. Gacener, p: 377. Heffner, p. 399. 36Bomma, pp. 10, 149-50. Geesener. p. 377. Hefmer. D. 399.

Wish the director if posalble, at least after consultation with hla.

The director'e approach w1ll determine the general time order of the laltial lighting dealgn. The not deagn 1. comonly a prior oonelderation, but, if the show ie to be prosented technioally primarily through the uee of llght, the set nay necesearliy need to be designed in accordance with and after the lighting deelgn. If oostunee are of preo doalsant technical 1mportance, the lighte muet be adjueted to thoir color and diatribution in blocying. In a lite cenner, pateup may be atroog deternining factor in the 18chting. Consequently, the lightinig dealgn may be the inlt1al etep in the techanioal deeigne, or it mej be dependent upon other prior technicel designs. 37

But, regardiese of thelr time order, all teohnical areac muet be coordinated and edjusted to one another in the best poselble maner for the totel production. 38 In fact, Bhrouchout the teohnianl plannine and execution, it 1 e of Groat 1aportance to have close cooperation among the technical departmente in order thet the production will heve a meximue ancount of integreted work and number of good 1 deas.

37 Bomman, p. 10. Heffner, p. "400-408. $30_{\text {Herfner. pp. } 400-408 . ~}^{\text {. }}$

Blocking cequicernatie.--Eourth, the designer must learn from the dipector the light requlresente thet the blocking of oharaotere doaande39o-wh1ch general arean ahould be h1ghlighted, which ehould be chadoved. The light deelgner ehould elwaye ettend reheareal(s) after blocking 1 e eets however, it 1s usually nocesaary to deolgn the lighting before that point has been reached in rohearaal, so learning the blocking from the director prior to blocting reheareals is ueuelly neceecary.
ioulpant requicementso-firth, the doalgner aunt know the equipaent including the budget he has and/or can have avallable. 40 In college theatre, the avallabllity of the etage lteelf frequently 11 mits the type of production. 41

## Grephic recording

 of a llght dealgawith these alx general areas of infornation known. the 11 ght dealgner is ready to dealgn the lighta 00 that the requiremente of ell elx ereae ere wet in the moet effective way ho can plen. He recorde thie plan graphically with the Sull realisation that lator nodiflcation nay be necoseary. 42 H1e graphlc recording--lleht plot, cue aheet, and perheps

39 Bomanan, p. 10. Gasber, p:"377. 40 geener, p. 378.
41 above. pp. 83, 94~98. 420asaner, p. 115.
additional dlagranesebould make clear the number of instrumonte used (asoign a number to each), tho tjpo of each in--trument, the number of lampe in each inotrument, the vattage of each lamp, the color of each color modia, tho purpose of eaoh instrusent, the mounting position of oach instrusont. the otago aroa covered by oach instrument, tho dimor and owitch to which oach instrument is connected on the control board, and tho dimaor roadinge of oan inetrunont throughout the ohow. 43

Exocution of a l1ght doolgo
Inninling eoulonent, -The firat otop in exocution of the lighting design is to Inctall ino equipaont in the thea-tro4h-oproforably carly onough so that cortaln lighting -ffecte can be tried before the mounting roheareal devoted to 11 ghting, cortalnly before tho lighting rohoaraal itsolf.

Shehting enhmande-During the 11ghting rohoaraal, all 11ghting hould be doflnitoly oeti45 thio maj roquiro myy changes and adjustmento and a longthy rohoaraal. For this roacon, prior addtiono of lighting to tho production are holpful.

Drene rahmenle-Dmplng droes rohoarcal, tho omphao1e In lighting ohould be upon emooth and accurate control. 46

[^19]Additional changes ohould not be nocesary at thic time; ocoestonelly they may be, particularly if costumes and/or spaltoup aro added for the drese rehosraal.

> Lighting Conoldoratione Applied to Sndipul ies

## Incormation samiced for the lhoh? deatm

In producing the lighting dealgn for Gadion Ren, the elx atep process 11 oted on pages 183 to 185 wae followed.

Banlc requiromente
A mowledge of the varlablee and kinde of llghting and thelr purpose and control had been gained by prior course work, back etage work, llghting deelgn and execution, and seohnlcal direction.

## Soript requiremente

The chosen ecrlpt ${ }^{47}$ indicated the following requiremente:

1. Haturallam or reall am were not neceseary, for the pley wae not intended to be realletic even for the period of 18. writing in the fifth contury B. C. 48
2. The truble nature of the play would indicate precealnanoe of cool colore and lower intenaltioe.
3. The regal, forsal, olasalcal otature and language of the pley would indicate 8 like mood in ilghting. 49

[^20]4. The rollgioua nature of the play could be omphaalsed or deomphaelsed. 50
5. Fotrances, ospocielly of the royalty, have a aleniflcance that ahould bo onphacisod, porhapa by lighting.
6. As act ourtain might or might not bo uaod. If not, 11 chta would tako 1 ta plaoo 1800 , curtaln and 11ghta nuot bo coordinatod.
7. The chorua, if played by a group of persona (a elagle person could bo givon the ohoral function), aloht require or afford an opportunity for plch and rariod oow poaltion 1n lighting.
8. The clasalcal divialona 51 of the play would appear to Indicate the bialc lleht changos. Consoquontly, the play weo, at the time of acript atudy. poughly grouped into the Solloving baalc 11ght changes
a). The prologue, pagee 25m30, 1a an explana-
slon by Oddpus, the prieat, and Creon of the tragic situetlen at tho play' oponing. Oenoral 1lluminetion of a cool -010r with apecial 111 unination for Codipue, the prieat, and Creon would bo prodable 11ghting.
b). The parados, page 30-31, 1s the ontrance of she chorue of Theben eldore. Probeble ilghting would Include varlety in the compooition during the ontranceo. ospocielly if it le a eroup-anc the long chomel do.
${ }^{50}$ Above pp. $37-38,45,48,54 . \quad 51_{\text {Above pp. }} 45-46$.
c). The flrat oplsode 10 on pagee 31-39. The Inltial long epeech of Cedipus would need breaking-eprobably bj blocking, porhape with variation in lighting, also. Core tainly uee of apeciflc lllumination to etrongthon the cose position of the etege plcture would seen desireble. Durling the angered dialogue botwoon Codipus and Tolresias a wara hue would porhape be doalrable.
d). The flret stasima, page 39, 1s the second choral ode. It would indicate a cooler hue than the prior eoene of anger.
-). The second eplsode, pagee 39-49, would probebly indicate emphasie for the separate entrances of Oedipue, Creon, and Jocesta. The angered dialogue between Oodipue and Creon alght again indicate a wara hue and/or an inereased brilliance. After Jocasta's ontrance the hue and/or brilllance alght altor.
f). The eecond etanime 1s on pages 49-50. Again, varlots durlng the choral ode would seen desirable. g). The third opleode 1 l on pages 50-56. Jocaste's preyer should probably have some speclflc 111 umlnation; the rollgious nature of the prayor should undoubtedly be indicated by set, lights, props, or something. The sepsrate ontrances of the nossonger and ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{O}$ dipue would porhaps indicate changee in the lighting in accord with the way in which the entrancen altored the pley's mood.
h). The third etaelma, page 56, would probably require varlety of eoe eort.
1). The fourth oplsode, pages 56-59, 1s the cllaaotio revelation and should probably be lighted accordingly.
z). The fourth etaelma, page 59, would egein indl cate variets during the ode.
1). The fifth opisode 1s on pages 59-68. The long meseage of the attondant should undoubtedly be glven varlety, pertape by lighting. The ontrance of the blind Oedipue ehould probably be pointed up by lighting, and h1s loag apeeches perhape given varioty by lighting. The eeparate eatrenoes of Creon and the daughtera, as well as the exit of Oodipue, should be eaphesized--perhape by lighting.
in). The flfth stasima, page 68, 1s the closing of the play and should be lighted accordingly.
n). The exodos, any action after the last
otasina, would necesoltato lighting offocte in accord with the action and mood.

Director's requirenente
Prow oonaulting with the director, the following
was learnod:

1. The approech would not attompt resllem the set design would be formallem-eymbollem.
2. Cool colore would predominate; the general 1llumantion ehould be cepeble of etrong intenelty.
3. Lighting ahould reflect the claadelen of the plays however, audience enelyale would indicate thet the formal laaguage and clasalcal structur ahould be doonphaalzod eonowhat. 81aplicity ahould predominate.
4. The rellgloue neture of the pley chould be deemphaalsod.
5. Fatrances, exite, and the clasalcal divialone could indicate generel light changes.
6. The chorus would conelot of twelve to elxteen men and woan. They would aorvo at the Thoban oldore aa well as the Theban citlzona. Conaequently, thelr 1nitial ontrance would cose after the curtain, during mualc, and before the prologue. The priest would procede thelr ontrance, and they weuld realn on the stage throughout the plag. This factor nodifled the basio light changes by proflxing two atepas Mrat, the curtain would require a0me lighting bofore opening: cooond. lighting varloty vould be necoaary after the oponing of the curtain, during the mualc and ontrance of the priost and ohorua. (The paredoa would be roplaced by a atacina, but basic 11ghting for that point in the ecript would not be altered.)
7. The ecrlpt rould not be out. The epeech of the attondant would be broken and glven to two women.
8. The entrance of the blind Oedipue ehould have the noot otartling and draatic lighting.
9. There would be no exodob; a final curtaln would fall after the final etaalma.
10. Thore would be curtain call. These two last comalderations would sufflx two additional atepa to the baalc lighting changeal First, the final curtain would require acee type of llghtingi second, the curtein cell would require a given light change.

## Other techaleal cealgn requiremente

In andloun Ber, both tho aot and the costumes toot auporordinance over the 11 ghting in time order of design and prodealnance of decialona.
B.) dentan.-eFran the oot dealgn, the baalc 11 ghting soot the following modifleatione:

1. There would bo aky to be 11 ghted .
2. The altar would requiro speciflc 1llualnation of
-acert.
3. The palace doore would serve for the entrances of the rojalty (including the blinded entrance of Oodipus) ane would roquiro apociso lllualnation, probably of a etrong 1ntenalty.
4. The numerous levels-ecoluma, stope, platforme-e could ald light compoaltion groatly in form revolation.
5. The maximun etage depth, width, and holght vould be used.
6. Tho colore of the et--bluo-groen, blue, bluo-red, red-orange-owould help dotorvine 11ghting colors.
7. The etyle of the set designo-formallom-symbollamovould help indicite the etyle in the llghting dealgn.

Contume delan.--Eran the costume deelgn the followlas modifications were indicated:

1. Contuse colorsmeset and contume colors were the canco-would help determine lighting colors.
2. The costume otyle--not reallatlc, but otyllzed-would help indlate the 11 ghting design stjle and mood.

Myeup dealer.--The makeup colors were coordinated with cot, costume, and $l 1$ ghting colora. Howeror, the otyle--not the claseloal use of maskei not reallstic, but atylized make-ups-again roflected the play (including the lighting) mood.

Properilen.--The prope in the play would be fow in number and eaall in else. Thelr colors would be integrated witb the eet, contumee, and lighte. None of thom appeared so neceseltate apecific 1llumination.
sound_effecte-oThe opening music would be taped and corve ae the cue to open the curtaln. (at a speciflc point In the music as indicated by the reading on the tape, the ourtain would be opened.) The inltial lighting offecte should roughly follow chenges in the music. if timing the lighting changes with the muelc (noting the readings on the tape), all cues for opening the ohoin-lighting, curtain, and so on-ocould come from the sound effecte technician.

Blocting requiromente

1. Tho chome was gonerally blocked on the altar unlt and around the DSt and SC columne. Gerieral 1llumination plue sono opeciflc lllumination on each of these three areas would cerve to light the chorns.
2. Jocanta' b prajer would regulre apeciflc 1llunination at the altarmoperhaps the same a that uaed for the choo Pue norement on the altar unlt.
3. foyal entrances through the palace doore would require opeciflo 11 lumination.
4. The entrance of blinder Oedipue would require a opecial apecif1c 111umation.
5. The upatage area would not require strong general

## 111umination.

Equipeont requirenonta
Dinmprn_milhble.eal control boerd with elzteon reslatence tJpe dipaers, each capable of carrying 3000 watte at 110 volts, was avallable. For the relative flexibllity of tho dimmors 800 Table 10.

Intmmentn avaliable-oThe avallable budget nade purchace of lighting instrumenta nearly prohlbitive. Conequently, the atock on hand should (if at all poseible) corve as the total avallable number of inutruments. For the tJpe, number, and condition of arallable inatrumente see Table 11.
A.ostional soutpinat arailable, - In addition to the 1 notruente, eeverel hundred feet of etage cable, extra suees, and color media-giase roundels for the foots and rolling etriplighte and a full stock of Cinabexeovere avallable.

Mons arellable. - The budget ves minimel.

Tajle 10
AVAILABLE DIMMRRS
Wo. ${ }^{2}$
Relative Flexlbillty

11 Pormenontly attached to three of roulte in the foot-
21 llente
31

24 Femele outlete are permanently attached along the 25 belcony rall--the beam light position

16 Outlets pemanently attached to a 36 soot battonb

14 Outlete peraanently attached to two olroulte of 15 the 5 and 8 wing pocketa

12 Attached to oablea which can be atrung or run from 23 BH wing to any position on the stage

Efor dimeer nubering ejatem eeo page 204.
bTh1e betton muet be concesled by fljing 1t, ground row, or otherwle.

## TABLE 11

AVAILABLE INSTRUMENTE

| Snotrumant tjpo | do. | Condition | Lampa |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | NO. | Watto | Condl tion |
| Bon projectora | 3 | Excellent | 3 | 1500 | 梱 |
| E112pso1dal opot21chte | 8 | Excollont | 8 8 | $\begin{aligned} & 500 \\ & 500 \end{aligned}$ | Hew |
| Coaorel apoto | 4 | Poor to falr | 4 | 500 | 01d |
| Pasj opote | 20 | Poor to falr | 18 | Varlod | 01d |
| Pallow apors | 1 | Excellent | 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1500 \\ & 1000 \end{aligned}$ | How and Old sev and 018 |
| 02 vorte Mocell che | 2 | 0008 | 2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1000 \\ & 1000 \end{aligned}$ | How <br> 02d |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 182np foot } \\ & \text { itplpli chts } \end{aligned}$ | 6 | Palr to 6000 | 100 | 60-100 | Hew and Cld |
|  | 3 | Excell ont | 20 | 150 | How |
| Gosep manelar abreplighte | 6 | Falr to good | 40 | 200 | Mew and 02d |

## ganhle pagacilon of Shlumitne bention

Mrouveing the design
W1th the required information avallable, the 11 ght1at for ondionn hex was doelgned. The required information
 Etlon, chorus lllualnation, palace door lllualnation, bllad oatrence illuminetion, and aky illumination.

General iliumination.--For gonoral illumination, foota, bordera, and beam 11 ghte were planned. The Poote and borders would have prinary red, greon, and blue oach on a soparate ciroult; by additive mixing, any hue of any saturation and of a medium or low brilliance could be produced.

Pat experience indicated the following about the south Dakota state College permanent footlighta. Slxty watt lape In each of twenty-four red and twenty-four green foot lamp outleta would give adequate maximum light intenalty froat the red and green foots. Bocause primary blue tranemita conolderab1\% leee lleht than do the othor two primarlea, twolvo 75 watt and twolve 100 watt lempa wore placed alternately in the blue foot lamp outlete.

Paet experlence with the South Dakota state College - tage indiosted that to adequately cover the entire depth of the stage (including a rear drop) three rows of border lighta are neceasarji two rowe wlll cover the otage area oxelusive of a rear drep; one row downetage will light approzimately two-thirde of the stage from the curtain line back. Blocking for gadolin fer made aubdued ilghting intonalty upatage an important conalderation; therefore, one downetage row of borter lighte (with the poaelble necessity for additional atplplighta for the eky) was decided đipon. Three etriplichta with elx lama each can cover the ontire Bouth Dakota state college otage width falrly adogiatelyi four units give good covorage. The 150 watt lamp units are somewht lialted

In intenolty the 200 watt lasp unite are sdeguste for inteadity for all three primary colore. Contequently, four mtplpllehte (each with olx 200 watt lanpe) were designed for plecement on the fertheat dorn"tage batten.

$$
\text { Elght 4e" olllpooldal. spots (each with a } 500 \text { vatt lamp }
$$

and hune froc the balcony rall) are frequently used in groups of four paire to 11 ght four sections eorone the entire downatage width of the Bouth Dakote stete College ateg. (Boam 11chte irequently ald eppcific lllunination by belng focuaed In pelre on oco-thlid, one-fourth, 020-sixth, or ono-01ghth of the etage aren. Then by diming in or out eny comblnition of palte of boes lighte, high lighte and ohedowe ean be rariod.d Pop ondimin Bex it wae decided to uae other ingtrumente and Cher aountinga for highlightine given arose and to use alx dan 11 ghtge-esoh focused on the entre downetsge widh in ender to give a poselble high intonelty to the general lllualsation. Partially saturated huoe of color medis (three waryor huen dirooted froa nage left, three cooler ones from atage Mert) would also help vary brllllance, caturetlon, and hue, at well se roveal forme-s function of epecific lllualnation.
choon dilurlintione-eA greet deel of variety in lighting for the chorus wae planned by uae of changee in color and cunstity froe the etriplighte plue any comblnation of beam lighte and epectific llluindration on the altar, Sjir colum, and CS coluan.

The altar innt wee coneldered a more important opeciflc 1lluminetion aree then the two DS column areas: The altar unit was one of the two basic set unite and had to balance the pilace; it had ejmbollc ofgnificance, 1 te rellgious uses and it had 1aportant usee for the priest and jocesta ae well ce the ohorus. Conaequently, a beaw projector with 1 te concontrated bear wae ueed to light the alter unit; two ollvotte Roodlighte were used to give speciflc lllumination to the D8 columan arese. The color media colore--unsatureted hues of levender and two dirforent bluea--were choaen for eeveral reasone: Three different colore would ald the composition of the etege plcture; cool colore wourd eld the tragic moods uneaturated colore would peralt oufflciont intenalty and vould not interfere with the function of the etripe to alter basic hue; lavender and blue would onhance the colore of the -0t and costumes.

Flatee VIII, X, and XII ohow planned chorus 1llualnations Flatee IX, XI, and XIII show actual chorus 111ualmation.
 Coalreble for lighting the palace doors, for 1t could produce the intenalty then needed, the concentrated contral bean could highlight tho ontoring figures, and the lees concontratod outor beam oould cover the width of the palace undt. If uoed with the general illumination andor DS oilvettes, it could permit necocary threo-dimenalonallam. The angle of the boas whlch
would offor grastest 71 bibllity and foveet number of ohadowe on the actor's faces vould require an inetrument mounting some diotance in front of and above the doors. The bean projector could cortainly be of sufflciont intonalty if placed on the balcony rall, but the eplll might cover the act teaser and/or pros aconlun arch. Actual trlal of such an Installatlon was noceseary to asoortaln that a boam projoctor could be used froa the bale cons rall to lleht the doore. A warmer color was planned both to polnt up the ontrances and to plck up the colors of the royal costumen.

For adational varloty ond added throondimonelonallem, a olde light from al was planned. Again trial wae neceseary to Indicate that a 4in ellipeoldal could be fooueed frosl the GL Ply gallory through the UBC and SC columne and onto the palace doore. Another (but a difforent) varm hue wee planned for thic light, which could porhaps also eome for speciflc dllunination for the chorus.

Platos XIV and XV Indlcate a possible palace door 1llumination and a elmilar illumination used during the show 1teelf.
 occurred through the palace doors, but required a difforent lichting offoct. 52 Agal $n_{\text {, }}$ a beam projector was ohoson for Its concentrated bean and great intenelty. If mounted above

52 Above, p. 191.
the level domatage of the coors, git vould cant unreal shadowe upon the rece of the entoring oedipus. A red-purple hue wee planned to ajmbolically help emphaelze the bloody aot of Oealpua' bilnaine and his regal etatus. A low intenalts of llcht an the ohomis would help seemphesize tham.

F1atoz xHZ and XVII how the planned and perfomance 12lumination for thin action.
 obtmalve, but integmied, beckground. strong intenalit lighting of it would be undesirable beoauae of the attention It would attrect to the becrgrousd. But, on the othor hand. If the eky lecked adequate lighting, it woult be a dotracting factor. The other lighting inatrument vould all have sose - ffoct upon the aky, and only actual trial would indicate whot kind of effect. No dofinite epociflc lllumination for the aly wae plenned, but one ellipeoldal, eeven etrlpe, ose follow epot, and all the general and baby spote, as woll so one dimmor, would be avallable if spectifle okj 11luminetion were found to be neceseery or deelrable.

It was planned to use the avallable dilmer board without any adpltiona or adiflcationa. No rouce of a diemer for difforent inotramente in difforent acenee wea planned. (Prequently thie ia neceasary with tho eesiopomenont and reetmeted dimer control boord in the sitate college Theatre.) Yor the desigeed dimaer uses see fab? 12.

## DESIONED DIMTET ISES

Mo. Inotrument Attachnont

11 Uee the three permanent foot circulte for the foots.

24 Ued three belcony rall outloth for three palre of been lighte. Oce one outlet for the palace door been projeotor.

16 E1s the batten D8 and uee for the D8F column light.
14 Das one fle circult for the fly gallers mounting of the
25 palaci door ellipeoidal. Weserve the other clrcult for poselble epeciflc otj lllualnation.

Dee throe cable outlote for the three borderlight ciroults. Jee the other three outlote for the SC ollfottof, the mltar boam projoctor, and the blind eatrance beam projector.
"Caspure thie table with Table 10 and Dlagram 18.

The lighting dealgn made use of only avallable inotreonte, other egulpaont, dimeor facllities, and the alaimal bulgot. Its groat oimplicity-ogonoral illumination plue only elx opecific lighting unite-was nevertholess sulted to moh reriety in ocmposition. And the design did eerve (with necoceary modiflcations53) as tpe final 11ghting dee1gn.

53sor the modificatione requirgd in the lighting doolgn, nots the flal graphic recordinge end the execution of the dosign.

The cotual plamning of the light doalen wae done jointly with the lighting ohelrman of the backetage orew. It ansaot be overatrasand that the oloeer the cooperation 10 anosg all persone connected with a chow, the bettor if the ebon becaum of Increseed number of good ideee, integretien of all worty, involvemont of ell wortors, and generol marmens of the production and workore.

Hocerding the doalgn
In order to make the final graphic recording of the liche deelon for gealpun hex more compect, a conolotont sot of ajebole ad abbroviatlone 10 used throughout the recorde.

Ubo type of inetrument by lettor and the epecific inetruent by araber.

Code for the type of inatrument
F-- Moodl1.ght
$0-011$ votto
3-aopos11ght
--ollipsoidal
foomfollow apot
Ba-bean projector
8T-antripllght
for foothehte
boboordorlighte
Thus, 802 1s the eocond listed ollvotte rloodlight, so 7 1e the seveneh llated ellipsoldel epotlight, or $3 T b 4$ 10 the fourth undt of border atrlplighte.

## Instrument pictorial labels.

Olvette floodlight $\square$
E2l1pooldal opotl1ght
Follow spotlight
(2)
Bean projector
Foot otrlpllghto

Border atrlpllghte

 The Nrot digit indicate the number of tho bank of dimer and mubere the bank froe top to button. The second digit Indlanteo the dimer in a given bank and number dimer from left to right. Thus, 23 10 the third dimmer froe the left in the second bank froe the top; 3110 the fleet dimer on the lost in the thine bask from the top.

Abhenditionneapplmay red, primary green, and promany blue are listed ae $R, G$ and $B$ respectively.

Clsabex colors are indicated by "C" followed by the Clabber number and name.
spoolf10 and general illumination are llotod as op. 111. and gen. 111. roopectivelJ.

Lt. etanda for light.

FIRAK LIOKTIBG DE8IOM

| Inatruagent label | Inotrument tspe | Number of 1apo | Color |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| STf 1－6 | 8triplleht | 12 laaps in －ach of 6 unlts，or 72 lampe | 24 each of R， 0 ，and B glaca roundels |
| STb 1－4 | Btrlpllcht | 6 lampa in each of 4 unlte，or 24 lampe | 8 each of C6 primery red C39 primary groon C2O primary blue |
| 80 1－6 | 41＂E111pooldal | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \text { lamp in } \\ & \text { cach of } 6 \\ & \text { unate, or } \\ & 6 \text { lamp: } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{lllll} 80 & 1, & C 51 & 8010 & \text { tint } \\ 80 & 2, & \text { C54 pale rose } \\ 80 & 3, & \text { c54 pale rone } \\ \text { Se } & 4, & \text { c36 pele lavondor } \\ 80 & 5, & 636 & p a l e ~ l a v o n d o r ~ \\ \text { So } & 6, & \text { C54 pele rose } \end{array}$ |
| 807 | 41＂s121pooidal | 1 103p | C2 21 ght abbor |
| B 1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 26" Been } \\ & \text { projeotor } \end{aligned}$ | 1 109p | C54 pale roee， double thickness |
| 82 | $16^{6}$ Bean projeotor | 1 lamp | C36 pale lavender． double kideknoes |
| 83 | 16＂Boam projector | 1 1anp | C23 nzonte and C36 pele levonder vith 3＂hole in contor |
| F० 1 | 20m 01170880 | 1 1amp | cao 11 che blue |
| 502 | 18＂011マ○セと＊ | 1 1anp | Cl8 middle blue double thlckneas |
| 85 | Follow opot | 1 1amp | cl8 middle blue |
| agoo Dlagrame 19－22 |  |  | bsee 02 agran 18 |

FOR OKDTBUS BEX

| Mattage | Purpoen | Mountige | Area covereda | D1-morb |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 24 Lamp of 60 matie en. for the color R as for B , 12 lampe each of 75 - 100 rate | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Gon. } 111 . \\ & \text { from } \\ & \text { undor. } \\ & \text { noath } \end{aligned}$ | Formanent, in apron -dge | EntIre wldth of otage plue lower aky | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} 11 \\ 21 \\ 31 \end{array}$ |
| 24 Lempe of 200 watto es. | Oon. 111. fram ororhead | DS batten | Ent1re vidth of -tage, C8 \& DS | $\begin{aligned} & 12 \\ & 22 \\ & 32 \end{aligned}$ |
| 6 lempe of 500 retts oa. | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Gon. } 111 . \\ & \text { boan } \\ & \text { l1ght. } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Belcoay } \\ & \text { rall } \end{aligned}$ | Entire width of stage, Cs \& DS | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 24 \\ 25 \\ 27 \end{array}$ |
| 500 metto | $\text { 8p. } 111 .$ -0p. doors | $\begin{aligned} & \text { SL fly } \\ & \text { gallory } \end{aligned}$ | Palace doors and CS \& U8 from a SL anglo | 14 |
| 1500 matts | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Bp. } 111 . \\ & \text { doors } \end{aligned}$ | Balcony rell | Falace doors from a front angle | 26 |
| 1500 matse | Bp. 111. chorue | SC on SC batton | altar and azy | 33 |
| 2500 matte | $\begin{aligned} & \text { sp. } 111 . \\ & \text { blind } 1 t . \end{aligned}$ | SRC on 3/4 us betton | Flrat 2 lovols D8 of the palace door: | 13 |
| 2000 matte | $\text { sp. } 111 .$ ohorue | D8i on Ds betton | Around DSR column | 16 |
| 2000 vate | $8 p .111 .$ ohorus | SLC on SC batton | Around DEC column and oky | 14 |
| 1500 mette | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 6p. } 111 . \\ & \text { blind } 12 . \end{aligned}$ | Spot booth, rear belc, opposite SC | Followed oodipue oftor blind ontranoe | None 1n -pot booth |

CONTROL BOARD DIMMER－INSTRUMENT CONNECTION²

| 0 <br> Master Dimer | 0 <br> \＃11 <br> ST：1－5 <br> Green | $r$ <br> \＃12 <br> smbl－4 <br> Green | 0 $[0$ <br> 413 <br> B 3 | 0 <br> \＃14 <br> Se 7 | 0 <br> ＊1 <br> s20t <br> います。 | 0 <br> 0 $7: 5$ <br> FO 1 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 <br> Mester Dimer | 0 <br> 721 <br> STP1－6 <br> Red | $\begin{aligned} & 0 \\ & {\left[\begin{array}{c} 0 \\ 0 \end{array}\right]} \\ & +c z \\ & \text { Smbl-a } \\ & \text { Red } \end{aligned}$ | 0 <br> 183 <br> Fo 2 | $[0]$ $4: 1$ <br> Se 1 $\text { Se } 5$ | 0 $\square$ <br> 32 $$ | C． $\left[\begin{array}{l} 0 \\ 0 \end{array}\right.$ ost $41$ | $\pi=7$ <br> So 2 <br> Se 4 |
| Mester Dimer |  |  | $\pi=3$ <br> 82 |  | Cone： <br> Ewite <br> Iimme <br> Cil mine <br> inst： <br> Istel |  |  |

aroil apot cont．rolled from spot nooth；bouse 11ERもQ contribed $\{$ smeparate dimar arad $8 w 1+c$ ．．．

## GINERAL ILLUMINATION INSTRUMENT MOUNTINGS



Por the convenience of the technician, units o: a serlea are numbored from his left to his right. If the light1ng control boand is in the auditorium (the 1deal location), the units would be nusbered from the audiencel lert to pleht. If the light control woard is Inadequataly locatod backetage (as it 10 in the south Dakota State college mostre), the unlto are nubered froa 8 L to SR as they are aumbered here.

## CHORUS INSTRUMENT MOUNTINGS



In addition, much of the lightiug of the chorus was done by ase of gonoral lliuntration-mparticularly low inten-


## PALACE DOORS INSTRTMMNT MCUNTINGS



So 7 also furnished pecifle illumination for the chorus.

## BLIND ENTRANCE INSTRUMENT MOUNTINGS



Explonation of Tables 24 and 25.-*Each speeific lightlas ohange is eot during the light rehoaranl by ooordination with a point in the action of the plaj. That point of action then becomes the cue action for the apeciflc llehtingchange. The llghting cues for fehtivin Rex wore taken bs the light chalfma from the cound offecta techniolan at the opening of the ohow and directly from the eorlpt during the reminder of the chow. (somet1mes the oue 1 e relajed to the light techniclan(a) by the prompter or etage manager.)

Table 14 showe the correlation between the serlpt or mualc aotion and the cue number.

Table 15 chowa the oorrelation betweon the cue and the apeolplo lighting for eaoh change. Oniy changen in the dimmer or awitah readinga are reoorded. Llght changes are usually ascoesarily gradual; conaequently, each cue flowed direotly 1nto the next so that by the time the cue action was reached, the lighting wes at the reading indioatod by that action's eve number. anly the lightine for oodipue' blind entrance mes purpoefly oufficiently repld to be perceptible. The dimeere are rated on a ten point eoales zero 18 dimmed completely out, ton 1s dimed complotely in.

## TABLE 14

FIMAL LIGHTINO CUES FOR GFDTDYS REX

| Cue No。 | Tapo Readlas or Page 10. | General Action |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. | Bogin tape | dudionce beglne to aseomble |
| 2. | $\begin{aligned} & 7: 58 \text { p:7.1. } \\ & \text { tape, } 988^{i} \end{aligned}$ | Foot illuaination on the act curtaln |
| 3. | 1035 | Change in hue of roots |
| 4. | 1097 | Change in hue of foots; houee lighte out |
| 5. | 1104 | Curtala opona |
| 6. | 1139 | SC ohorus ollvotico brought in |
| 7. | 2280\% ond of muale | DS\& ohorns ollvotte brought in |
| 8. | p. 25 | Prioat ontere USL |
| 9. | P. 25 | Chorue ontore UsL. CSL, DSR, CSH |
| 10. | p. 25 | Oedipue ontere from the palace |
| 11. | p. 26 | During prioet' speoh |
| 12. | p. 27 | Before Creon's ontrance DBlk |
| 13. | p. 30 | Flrat choral ade |
| 14. | P. 31 | Chorue' movement to the altar |
| 15. | p. 31 | Oodipue ontere fros the palace |
| 16. | p. 34 | relrealem enters rrow USL |
| 27. | p. 39 | Becond choral ode |
| 28. | D. 39 | wefore creon's ontrance cal |
| 19. | p. 39 | After Croon'o entrance |

TABLE 14-0 Cont1mued

| CuO | Tape <br> Roading or Pase Mo. | General Action |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20. | P. 40 | Oodlpue entere from the palaoe |
| 21. | P. 43 | Jooasta enters frow the palace |
| 22. | P. 49 | Jocasta and Oodipus exit Into the palace |
| 23. | P. 49 | Third chorrl ode |
| 24. | p. 50 | Jocasta'e prayer at the altar |
| 25. | P. 50 | Kescenger entere DSR |
| 26. | P. 56 | Fourth choral do |
| 27. | p. 56 | Eefore the thepherd onters USL |
| 28. | p. 56 | After the chepherd entere |
| 29. | P. 59 | Attendante onter frow palace |
| 30. | P. 61 | Blind Oedipue entere from palace |
| 32. | p. 62 | Ae Oodlpus opeake |
| 32. | P. 62 | As Oodlpue movee down lower stops |
| 33. | P. 65, | Creon enters DSt |
| 34. | p. 68 | After Oedipue exlte DBE; flaal choral ode |
| 35. | p. 68 | Ae curtaln cloves |
| 36. |  | Curtain call ** |
| 37. |  | After the final curtain falle |

TABLE
FIMAL DIMNER READIHO3

| Cus <br> No. |  | Oenersl 111 mlnatl on |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Yoots |  |  | Borders |  |  |
|  |  | STE 1-6 \$11, | 89\% 1-6 121.6 | STf $1-6$ $\$ 31.8$ | 3Tb 1-4 112. | $\begin{aligned} & 9 T b 1-4 \\ & 22, R \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 8701-4 \\ & 32,8 \end{aligned}$ |
| 1. | 10 | OQ 0 | on 0 | on 0 | on 0 | on 0 | on 0 |
| 2. |  |  | 10 |  |  |  |  |
| 3. |  | 10 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4. | 0 | 0 | 0 | 10 |  |  |  |
| 5. |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10 |
| 6. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8. |  |  |  |  |  | 3 |  |
| 9. |  |  |  |  |  | 5 |  |
| 10. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 11. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 13. |  |  | 5 |  |  | 10 |  |
| 14. |  |  | 10 |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| 15. |  |  | 5 |  |  |  |  |
| 16. |  |  | 0 |  |  | 8 | 7 |
| 27. |  |  |  |  | 7 | 0 |  |
| 18. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Note: Each 1netrument gonerally corvos cevoral B 2 , and So 1 provide most of the exy lllumination.

## TOR ORDTPUS BEX


purposes 1t 1 e 11 sted by 1 te prodoninant purpoee. STf 1-6.

TABLE 150.

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { Cue } \\ & \text { No. } \end{aligned}$ |  | Gonoral lllunination |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Foots |  |  | Border: |  |  |
|  |  | STP $1-6$ N12.0 | $\begin{array}{ll} 3 i r & 1-6 \\ 122, & R \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \operatorname{sTr} 1-6 \\ & 131,8 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 8 T b 1-4 \\ & 12,0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 85 b 1-4 \\ & 122, R \end{aligned}$ | 8Tb 1-4 $32,8$ |
| 18. | 0 | 0 | 0 | 10 | 7 | 0 | 7 |
| 19. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 20. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 21. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 22. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 23. |  |  |  |  | 0 |  | 10 |
| 24. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 25. |  | 6 | 6 |  | 6 | 6 |  |
| 26. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 27. |  | 5 | 0 |  |  | 0 |  |
| 28. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 29. |  | 0 | 5 |  | 0 |  |  |
| 30. |  |  | 0 |  |  |  |  |
| 31. |  |  |  |  | 6 |  |  |
| 32. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 33. |  |  |  |  |  | 6 | 3 |
| 34. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 35. |  |  | 10 | 0 |  |  |  |
| 36. |  |  |  | 10 |  |  | 7 |
| 37. | 10 |  |  | 0 |  |  |  |



## Explanalion of Platid VIII through XVIJ.--The even

aubered platee are photographe of planned beelc 11 ght read1agsi tho odd numbered plates are photographe of olmilar readlage veed during the abow. Platee VIII through XIII concern Ohore llluainations Platee $X I V$ and XV concern pelace door Llluminationj flates XVI and XVII concern the blind ontrinace.

Chorre illumination was planned to uso foot and bordoro light generel lllumination plue any oomblnation of bean llghte, DSR and BC ollvottoo, altar bean projector, and poaslble other Rabtrumonte.

Plate VIII ohows one posalble chorue lighting with one prymery color in foots and borders full and the SC ollvotte at a seading of four. (Thle exect light setting wee used for ous 6.)

Plate IR ohow the same baalc llght pattorn as Plato VIII with ollght readinge (it to 3) for beam lighto, pelace coor been projector and ellipeoldal, DSR ollvette, and altar bean projector. This photograph was taken midwaj betwoon cues 13 and 14. (Longth of tine oxposure accounte for the apparont groater quantlity of light in Plete VIII.)

Plate $X$ abows a cocond posible chomje 11 ghting usias foote, bordere, DSR ollvette, and altar belm projector.

Plate XI shows oue 23 uelng euch a pattern with one addition, the palace door ellipeoidel frow SL.

Plate XII nhowe a thlrd possible chorve illumination of foote, borders, DSh and SC ollvettes, altar beam projector, and palece door ellipsoldal.

Plate XIII shove the oanc combination (with a ollghtly inoreased reading for the $8 C$ ollvetto and altar beam projector) durling the ohow, cue 24.

Plate XIV ohowe a generally planned illumination for oatrences through the palace doore--generel 1llumination, seme tonlag froa the ollvettee, and uee of the palace door bean projoctor and olllpooldal.

Plate $X V$ showe cue 15, the seme comblantion with a reduced dimser reading for the palaoe bean projector.

Plate XVI ohowe the planned llghting for the blind catrenoc-blue foote and bordere full end blind bean projecfor sull.

Plate XVII 10 cue 30 , the came roading with the addition of the Dsk ollvotte. The great contraet betweon the brilliant beaa projeotor and the goneral lllumination cannot be photoo graphlcally roproduced with accuracy, for the photographic f11. 1s not oufflclently eneltive to record the differences the oje can note. In taking these laet two photographe, the conoral lllumination required a longthy tine oxpooure before the bean projeotor ves turned on. Thie acounte for the apparent difforenco in general lllumination of the photographe.

## PLate VIII

One planned 1llumination for the chorus. Actually used for cue 6 .


Plate IX
Same reading with silght toning from other instruments. Used midway between cues 13 and 14.


PLATE X
A second planned 1IIumination for the chorus.


## P.AYEXI

The same reas'onz with oxe atditional instrument. U'sed for whe ?


## PLATE XII

A third planned illumination for the chorus.


Pu気思 Yjid
The same tattem with increaced quantity from two instrumante. thes fos cue 24.


A planned 111umination for the palace doors.


PLATE XV
The same pait, rin with a neduced dimmer reading for the tazace beak projector. Cue 15.


## PLATE XVI

Planned 11. umination for the entrance of blinded Oedivur.


## RLATE XVI:

 ment. Cue 30.


## Execution of the light degign

Inotalling the equipient
Utillsetion of equipaent avallable in the south Darota 8 tate College drama department omitted the poselbllitj of equipo ment delaj that alcht arlee from orders, back orders, or rented unite. Howeror, inetallation of the equipaent had to by doe lajed untll May 16 and 17, two daja bofore 11 ghting rehearaal. for the otage and light equipmont were belng used for numerous chowe up through Key 14. On hey 15 eet consideratione predoninated.

Bo, on maj 16, the o1x ellipeoldal bean lights, the palace bean projoctor and ollipsoldal, and the blind boan projeotor more ingtalled. Since the technical work was done bj 8 tate College otudents and ataff, nost or whom have heavj dejtiae echodules, the installing of this equipaent on thay 16 oocurred during the evening rehearasl and was limited to unite counted off otage. The blind ontrance beav projector, llounted on otage, was inotelled during a break in the roholaral.

The remalnder of the 11 ghts wore inetalled on the 17 th . After the lighte wore inetalled, eoverel lighting comblnatione wore tried in an effort to determine what type of lighting ohould be uned on the exj. Illumination reon the foots and aplll from the SC olivotto and altar boan projector made posalble numerous light ohanges on the ekj. So no epeciflc 1llualnation for the oky wae plannen unloge llehting rohoartal should indicate ouch a noed.

After installation, it weo obvious that all inatrumente would dim oompletely out with the exception of the paleoe elllpeoldal mounted in the fly gallery. (fealetance type dimmore will not din lampe out oomplotoly if the load is ineufflolent.) Andtional resistance could have been added to the 11no, but the ellght intenalty of the lamp at a dinoer refidine of sero mede additional realetance unnocesampy.

Durlige the course of lighting comblmation triale, the Cinabex in the blind beam projector melted in the central araa of the strongeat beam concontration. The effeot ereated bj the central hole eeemed to and to rather then detrect fron the effeot; therefore, the Cinaber was not changed.

Mounting rohoareale
Although the roheareal on May 18 wne primarily devoted to the aotora' ndjuatmont to eot, eac tontative lighting offecte as coordinated with zers tentative cros wore planned. Prior to reheereel time, the light chalman end technicel direotor decided upon some genornl 1lluwination pattorne-esoe Platos VIII, $X$, XII, XIV, and XVI. These changee wore thon porgehly ooordineted with the slaselcel divielone of the eorlpt at listed on pagee 188 to 190.

During the rehoraral on the 18th. the dimpor raedinge were tamtatimig egt for tho ohow. The light boerd at stote college is in the right wing; the opprator atands turned threow fourting away from the elage, and ancking of the winge usually requires nearly entirely blocking hia viot of the etage. Ao
a conaequence, the 11 ghte wore cot by comenalcation frym the technionl difector at the house phone to the light chalirann (who operated the eontrol board) at the control board phomo. The 11 ght chnirean would, whon time pornitiod. come out front to cee the apeclfo offect and to coordinate her 1deae with those of the technical alroctor. Thls ojatom of nottlag lighte 10 most lasdequate, especially fra the standpolnt or the coos trol boser operator. ind epemiling lights from suoh a poaltion 1. equally al esdrantegoous. 54

The prodominantly ovortoad llghting for tho bllnd ontrence a1c not 82 ve aufflelent light to Oedpus' sece, so the follow apot was added to follow hia after hie laet entrance.

Durlag lighting rohenral, the light changes and cues are cot, one hopes permanontly. This meane that a ecose muct Do ropeated untll tho light change 10 dotorained and cas be aecurntoly perforacd. At a ooncoquence, a 11 ghting rebearsal can beorme extromely long, particularly if the tochalciana are laoxperionced, the plot 10 oonglex, and/or prior trial of oces 11ghtimg has beon lialted.

The 11 ghting rohearsal for gadioun fies on ling 19 vont voll with fow ropotitlanc. The beslo lighting obanges to be made bofore the contuno and makoup roholroal the noxt evoning vore sive in mumbors (1) correct the aplil thet one bordor 1anm mes oasting on the pirat teacer. (2) Mate the alge and

54Above, p. 168.
movement of the follow apot nore aubtle. (3) Din the blind beem profector out sooner. (4) Incresee genersl 111 uninetion during the soone with the shophord. (5) In goneral, make the changes aore slowly, one flowing directly into the next.

During the mounting reheareal of may 20, the coatumes and meseup were added. The color of the follow spot cinabex wachod out the offoct of blood around Oodlpue' ejes and had to be changed to a medium blue. The light latenalty for the curtain omll wae aleo sltered--decreased.

## Drose rohoaraal

After the dress rohoarasl, oll Clnabez wore cheoked to Inoure that they wore not in danger of meltiag, fading, ourling out of the frame and oreating apill, und $s 0$ on. (The hole in the blind beam projector had been retained.) Additional altorations in lighting wore not noeded for the performancees however, it $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{a}} \mathrm{s}$ neceseary on opening night to correct an alteretion made in the follow epot adjuetment by the Momorial Day aseembly orew. 55
$55_{\text {above, p. }} 98$.

## CHAPTER VII

## DESIGNING AND EXECUTING THE MAKEUP

TABLE OF CONTENTS FO CHAPTEE VII

Part 1. General Considarations in HakoupTwo purposes of makeupPage
Oeneral purpose ..... 232
DeplaltionAchievenent
speciflc purpose ..... 232
DeflnitionAch1evorent
Three varlables of mekeup
Kakeup modeling ..... 235
General principles of modelingsodily areas in modelingciolor and plastics in modeling
Kakoup color ..... 237
Cherecterlatics of colorClaselfication of colorchoice of color
Makeup application ..... 240Oreasepaint applicationGreaseless applicationComblnation application
Producing a makeup design
Information required for a dealgn ..... 241
iselc requiremente script requirements 11 rector's requiraments Cther technical design requiremente quipment requiromente
Page
Graphic recording of a masoup dealgn ..... 243
Execution of a nakeup design ..... 244
Nothod of execution Makeup roheareal ppae rohoaral
part 2. Kakoup consideratione applied to cedipus bier
Information required for the makeup design
Besic requirements ..... 246
Sorlpt requiroaonta ..... 246
Dlrector'e requiremente ..... 246
Other technical deelgn requirmente ..... 247
Equipaent requiremonte ..... 247
Graphic recording of the makeup design
Producing the deolen ..... 248
Kayoup design for the face makeup deelgn for the body makoup design for the halr
kocording the design ..... 250
lixecution of the makeup dealgn
Method of exeoution ..... 255
Kakoup rehoaraal ..... 255
rees reheareal ..... 255

## BODY FOG CRABTER VII

## General Conciderationa in Maroup

## ore pucponan of mireupoe cemend and ronadic

conoral purpose
Daflnition.--The general purpose of makoup 10 the same as that for all technical areao--to onhance in tho beat pooalble way the expreseion of the play. ${ }^{1}$

Achlarment. - In order to accompliah its general pur pose, makoup aust be coordinated with the production in etjle and aoce. The audience, however, generally expecte a deflaltely reallotio appearance in makoup except for charactors Tran fanteoy or for charactore in clearly etjlized playe. Coneequently, the real art in makeup often becomes concealment of the art.?
opecifle purpose
 purpoce of helping each actor portray hie role. 3 Proper antoup deelgn takea into account the actor himaelf as woll ae the role he ie acting.

[^21]Achlempente-aitakeup should bo coordinated with the actor ae a pereon. 4 the faclal (and othor badily) bone and "uacle otructure, control, and uee differ in each peraon. Makoup Ahould bo ueod to concoal or altor an actor's boac or muoele atructure not in rooping with tho charactor. But, oquallj luportant, makoup should omphacizo tho musclos and bones of the actor which give otrongth and clarlty to hlo charactorisation. Makoup 10 applied to a 11『1ag moblle face and body and must ut11180 the lines and moroaonts of that saco and body.

Makoup ohould be ooordinated with the actor's role. 5 Noquontly maroup 10 dlecueeed ae boing stralght (maroup applied to correct the actor' own skin tono and to mako hla more attractivo) or charactor (askoup ueod to complotolj ohange tho actor' appoarancel. 6 following it an explanetion of why the uee of etralght makoup would eeem to be a deterent to tho charactorisation of anj role:7 Juct ao each porson 1 a difforent from anj other pereon in the world, so ororj dramtlo character chould be unlque. Such unlquenean cas only be
${ }^{4}$ Coreon, pp. 99-106.
${ }^{5}$ corcon, pp. 99-106, 60-75. Dolman, p. 378. Gasoner, pp. 301-82. Hofmer, pp. 426, 430, 432-33.
${ }^{6}$ Dolman, p. 377. Gaeaner, pp. 379-80. Herner,
 ใ9 booslot of HollNoon, Callfomias Max Faotor rition up studio, 1952). No. 1-9.
${ }^{7}$ corson, pp. 60, 72.
achleved by thorough underatanding of the character derived frow tnowlodge of the factore in his 1110 which heve contrio buted to his present phyolcal appearance. soldom would glorifying the actor's exact features be a true indication of the charactor'e present phyelcal appearance; instead, the oheractor' a oox, herodity, onvironment, temperanent, health, and age would have to be atudled to give an accurate anever. 8

Oonerally mpating, men play mon and womon play women In the theatrs todey, so there is little neceselty for cone corn by the akkoup artist about a charactor' sex.

Heredity 1 e responsible for the beelc characterietlce of bodily bone and muscle structure. In each individual there 1s similarity of bodily structure (especially to other members of hie race), but there are also unlque difforencee. Expreesive hereditary foatureo eaolly subject to unique alteration by the makoup artiat are ojobrowe and nose.
$A 11$ of the external factore whlch exert an influence on man are reforred to as his onvironmont. Environmont would include (i) general geographic area-etropical. frigid, or temperate cllmete; terrain; flore; feuna; (2) rocetional and erocational conditione-an or out of doors, social statue, economic status; and (3) cultural oonditionseonores, institutions. phllosoph1es. Modiflcation in makoup of akin color,
$8_{\text {AB rootnote }} 5$.
halr otjle, and etreot hakoup are some of the easiest waje of indiceting environmental influences on charnctor.

Forsonelits (teaperament plus charactor) y ylll change Inhorent phyolod appoarance both intrinolenlly (habltual expreselone bring sbout tuscular chages) and eupertiolally ( some oherecter might bleech her heir, uee green oje ohedow, and 00 on).

The state of a porson's health and his age both obviously shape h1s appearance.

## Thone machable of mand

## Katoup modellag

General peinciolas in adeling.-Undorstanding modeling in ankoup requires undorstanding the pattorne of light and ehade whioh ettend three-dimenelonal objecte. One can tell the difference in a rectenguler and a cjlindrical obJoet hold at a distance ovon if their onde are concoaleds the suadon change in surface direction of the roctaneular objeot orcetes a hard edge agelnet ite backegrounds the graduallj ohonging cjlladrlcal surface createe a soft edge agalnot ite bisckground. In ehort, "wherever there is a lowlight, or madow, there is a corrosponding highlight.
$9_{\text {Erl ch From, Kan for Himeelf (New York: Rinohart }}$ and Company, Incorporated, 1947), pp. 50-117.

When the furface ohangee direction abruptly, the shadow and highlicht are 1minedietely ad jacent; but when the ourface obnaee direction gredually, shadow and highlight are eeparated bj a gradation of intermediato shados."10 ModelIng in makeup takes into account the bodily ourfaces, their change in direction, and their corrosponding highlighte and lowlighte.
 for makoup 18 the face. 11 The five basic faclal areaseforohead, ejes, nose, cheoke, and mouth and ohin-oall have numoroue planes that can be nodeled in an inflnite number of patterne. Analjole of the charactor'spoleal appoarance es dotoritined by his sex, horedity, onvironment, poracsallty, health, and agei carvful etudj of the ector'e own face: and knowledge of the principles goveraing kigh21ghts and loww 11 ghbe ere ell neceesery requiremente for deelgning the beet poselble rectal makeup.

Liko requiromonts are nocessary in making up anj othor part of the bodj which 10 exposed. 12 Hande, one of the most expreselvo parte of the body, are subject to unllalted variety
${ }^{10}$ Cormon, p. 9. 3ee alsol Coraon, pp. 2-9. Dolmun, p. 380. Gaeenor, pp. 382-83. Hex ERctor, No. 1-9. 11 corson, pp. 99-106, 108-128. Gacenor, pp. 382-85. Hoffnor, p. 449. Hax Enctior, No. 1-9.

12 corsen, pp. 188-30, 155-72. Gasener, p. 384. Hermer, pp. 449-50.

In modollne. Neok, tuoth, halr, as woll as any othor bollly part and alyo help denote charecter.
 11ghts add lowllghte of modeling are acjileved by color=e higher lateasitlea for highlighting and lover intenelties for 2 owll entling. 13

If aore grose alterations are roquired, plastics can be applied--to the nose, chin, cheels, syolidw, nock, handem to bulld wo and rechepe tile besic bodily etructure. 14

Matcus color
Marantieciatila of colec.--P1gmont color has throo charactorlatl cs--hue; saturation, orintensity; and valuo. 15

Hue refors to the rednesn, blueness, groenness, yellownese of a color.

Baturation, or intenalty, refore to the purity of a color, the amount of complementary hue or gray it has in ite coepooition.

Value mefers to the lightnees or darknoge of a color, the emount of white or black it has mixed with it. A color
${ }^{13}$ Corson, pp. 108-30. Colman, p. 380. Gamoner, pp. 382~83.

14 corson, pp. 134-54. Dolman,- p. 379. Gassnor, p. 385.
${ }^{15}$ corsorz, pp. 12-15. Hoffnor, pp. 295099.
of Hich value (Flnk, pale blue) a called e elnt; color of lov velue (bluo-blacy) $I_{\text {E }}$ callad a chade.

Clinshaygalion en colorionfach coloy can be classlled whith n reletively high dogree of accuracy by code fjlng lte tue, saturation, and valuo; hovever, sanufac. turere of makeup do not do this. Nurtherpara, the aumbere and labela of 期 menufacturor are noj.thor eelf conoletont nor conthttont with any other manifacturer's numbere and labola. Hor lo there a consiptency anong theatre people ebout oal or decigration for mateup, costrames, palat pigeont, and/or color medie. Consequently, 1t 1 e oaslest for the mekoup ertigti to use a ejetomatlzod pattorn os color dealgnatioa (according to hue, eaturstion, and valuo) sor all aakoup. 16 One such ejatem has been romulated by Michard Corson. 27

Mhalce of color. - The wost 1mportant color choice in bakoup 1e that for the bsee; accurate selection can oome onls after charactor andyeie. Ono or two related colore of hleher velue for hlolllehte and one or two related colors of lower ralue for lowlights are neceseary. Character nnelyin may iso indicate neceselty for nougs, oje thedom, or any number of athor makoup matorlelo.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 16 \text { cornon, pp. 16-24. Casener. p. } 382 . \\
& 17_{\text {coreon, pp. 16-17. }}
\end{aligned}
$$

Color muet be coordineted not only with oharecter, 18 but oleo with 11ghting and cootumea. Any plgment color 1. celsotlve in the 11ght raje $1 t$ w111 reflect and/or abeorbi concequently, the color of etage lighting oan Greatly elter the appearance of mazeup. 19 Oenertlly epeak1ng, eatureted light colore heve the greateat effect upon miteup, given color of light falling upon a alallar color of plgment onhancen the plgment, and a given color of light falling on a complementary color graje or blactene 1t. It 1s mont uterul to trj matoup undor tho otago 11ghto Ing whioh will be used for 1t. colored lights or color eodia for the lighta in the makeup roon are alao an aseot. Coatume coloro are affected in the asse general way as mateup colore. Consequently, 1ntegreted eeleotion of 11ghting, costume, and makeup colora 1a easential. 20 Coon tunco affeot moot diroctly the cholce of eje uhadow oolor, eapeosally for vomeni analagoue or the same oplora for both contume and ejechadow aro frequently recomendeble.

18 coreon, pp. 76-85, 108-30. Lolman, pp. 378-79. Gaenner, pp. 379-82, 389. Hertaer, D. 430.

19 iowan, p. 150. Coraon, pp. 26-32. Gaeaner, pp. 379, 388. Hefrnor, pD. 419, 432.

20 coreon, D. 1. Heffner, pp. 419, 427. Seo also above, pp. 140, 175.

Mareup application
The nost 1 mportant advice for makoup application 10 to do 1t.21 Only actually worting with the varlous kinde of maxoup in various combinationa can tell anjone whet the offect wll be. The varlous typea of appllcation include greasepeint, greseelese, and varying combinetiona of both.
 procedure for greasepaint is to cleance the face with cold oream; epply greaee beee eperingly; add eje mateup. rouge, and other modeling materlale; powder; and add 11nes. Grease base hae the advantage of more thorough ooverage and easior blending with the grease modeling metoriala. Ita dieadrantageo include meaelneae in applloatlon, cerlous coilling of clothing, difflculty of removal neceasary powder spplication, and difficulty in touching up.
 althor care or liquid baec. It hee the advantages of belng leas meaej, nore easily applied and romoved, easlly touched up, and uaed without powder. Ite dieadrantages

[^22]1nclude lose coverabllity than groaaopalnt and froquont necoalty to uco it with greaae modeling matorlala booauae of the 11 mited eupply of colors and kinds of greaseleas nodeling natorltia.

Comblaation apoliagtion. 24--conblnation appli oat1 ona occur 11 groacelesa baas 18 uaed with grease or groase and greanelea nodeling nateriala. The groase nodeling oolora maj bo applied over, under, or both over and under the greanoloas base. Powdering le neceoeary if groace model1ng mtorlals are used over the groaseloes bese.

## Pconinctins a maeup dathen

Information required for a mkoup dealgn

Banlo cequicementro-owlth a knowlodge of how to vary nodeling, color, and application in accordance with the purpose of aaroup, the maroup artiet ia propared to produce a makoup doalgn.

Soriph maulaomant?.--Fros the ocrlpt, the makoup artlat will learn the apparent nood of the play, hietorloal setting, number and baelc nature of the charectere, and ohanges in characters that alght-requiro maroup alterations.

[^23]Dicestac: maylconents.o-Trom the director, the apparent requirements of the serlpt can be vorlfled and thalitionel meneup concliteratione can be learned. The director determine the epeciflc mood and etjle of the play (with which aakeup must be coordinated); any acript nodiflcitione In estlae, number of characters, and oo ons and posible other speciflc makeup requirements.

Ciñor fechnical de日len ceoulcemente. 25-The makoup wuit perlect the mood and style of the total technical production. It must be especielly integreted with lichtIng and costuming colors; the color modia of a 11 ghting coaign oocaol.onally must be modified becauce of tholp effect upon mareup colors. Dietance fron the audience directly affeota the etrength of highllghte, lowllghte, and IInes.

Equlumath cequlcamentr. 26-aApplring makeup requiree a place to do the applying and the aaterlale to apply. A sakeup roon neode lights, airrore, snd tables for the eaterlele. 81nte, colored lighte or color medle for the llghte, good ventilation, plenty of room, and othor foaturen are added aseote.

[^24]The matorlale neoded depend upon the makoup dealgn. There are acor" of mateup atetorlals, and any artiole not generalls agociated with mareup mas be utillzed (11mited orly by humen ingenulty) to produce part of e given eakeup dealgn.
metorlale utllized may also be dependent upon the bufget if the organisation dose the purchaalng. However, the actor may purchaeo h1a own makeup materlele.

A akkeup morgue of photographa, drawinga, akotchoa, carloatures, cartoone, and peintings of people 10 an invaluable ald in dotermining the modeling for makoup doalen.

Kakoup workahoets should be uaed if meking up 1a done under eupervislon.

Gruph1 o recording
of a makeup desien
Tho gakoup design should be rooorded on a makoup plot vhlch indicatea each character and a makeup deeoription for him for each acent in which he hae a mekoup alteration ${ }^{27}$ the mancup deacription includes the modeling, oolor, and application of all makeup metorlala. Occaalonela iy aketchea, diagrame, and/or plates are also a part of the makeup rocording.

If maceup 1 s under supervision, there should be a makoup workebeet (on which tho mekeup 1e clearly deecribed) for eack actor. One makoup workencot, which Includes pictoral representation of the five facial areae ${ }^{\text {and }}$ their odeling and coloring--1e especially lucid and ueerul. ${ }^{28}$

Execution of a matroup deeign

Mothos of exacuifor.--kakoup may be applied by a makeup artist, by a makoup staff under the oupervision of a makeup artist, by the actore thomelvee under the eupervision of a mateup ertist, or bi uneupervieed actors. 29

The appll ontion of makeup bj a makoup artlet 1 noures quallty makeup. If a makeup artist is engeged from outelde the organlzation, it is cootly and frequently the artist 1 e leas familiar with the production than would be dealrable. Howevor, a makoup artist can uoually be eecured or tralned within the theatre organlation ltself.

For large cant chow, the makoup can be applied by a staff (persone acqualnted with etage makeup) under the alrection of the mateup artist.

Or the actors themeelves can apply their own makoup under the eupervision of a mateup artist. This is the most
${ }^{28}$ corson. p. 185.
29corson, pp. 183-85. Heffnor, pp. 423-24, 435-36, 451-52.
dealrable method for educational theatres each actor learne the art of makoup and, at the sane time, h1e work 1e coe ordinated with that of the other actore.

The dealrablilty for uniformity of etyle in akreup can rate unoupervieed and unintegrated makoup deelgne inadvicable in profocelonal ohowoi in ametour thoatro, lack of suportiolon can opell chaos.

Makeup mheacml.-oMnkup rehearoal 30 pernite the actor to become accustomed to h10 makoup and poralts the matoup deaigner to determine any alteratione in the final mateup dee1gn.

Enough time for application ind the proper matorlals are cesentiale for makeup rohearal. If actore inexperienced with mereup are applying their om meteup, they ehould have done so prior to makoup reheareal both to deteralne the time they need and to practice the application iteelf. If mateup includee not easily manased halr or othor pleces, reheareal with them prior to ankoup roheareal 1s deelrable.

Dcen rehercen..-oDurlag droes rohearsel, the obe jective of makeup 1s accurate and integrated execution of the final makoup deeign ae doteralned by the makoup rohoaral.
$30_{\text {Heffner, pp. 448-49. }}$

## Makeup Conslderation Applied to grdipu bier

## Informaton Moulead for fore mitt the dretem

Baelo requirements
The makoup doalgn wae produced bj a jolat conference of the director, technical director, technical adrieor, 00 tumer, and matoup btaff-oach of whom had a different degree of basic makoup knowledge.

Soript requiroments
From the sorlpt, the following conelderatlone could be Inferrods

1. Maete and wige might bo used. 31
2. The blinding of Oodipue vould probably be the only neod for matoup alteretion. 32
3. Peraons of various social etatue would require different ante or antoup. 33
4. The exact number of actors would have to be asoertalned from the director.

D1roctor'e requiremente
From the director the following wae learned:

1. Macke and wige would not bo used.
$31_{\text {Above, P. 56. }}$
32Above, p. 47.
33 Above, p. 56.
2. Styllzed and makllte mkeup would be used.
3. Only the bllnd entrance of Codipue would require a mikroup change.
4. The cast would include a chorue of twelve to elxteen (half men and half women), a palace offlcial. two fomele attondante instead of the one mele attendant, Iamene, Antigone, a boy to lead the blind prophot, and the remaining llet of characters on the seript cest list.
5. Helr etyles would heve to be modifled in ecoord with a atyllzod Greoian appoarance.
6. Royalty should be leee etylleod thon the ohom ruat all social atatue ohould diffor.

Other teohnical
dealgn requiremont.
Lite all other technical areas, makeup would necesearily reflect the production atyle and mood. In that enner, it would be integrated with the total technical dealen.

Chorus matoup eapecially should be high value hues, for chorus membere would frequently be close to the eaturated huee from the footllghte.

## Equipment requiremente

makoup workshoots would be made out for each actor, who would purchace and apply hie own mareup in accord with h1a workabeet and under the supervision of a mekeup etaff.

Roome for making up would have to be echoduled for makoup and drese rohoaraale and porfomances. (Thore are no makoup rooas at South Dakota State Collegob clasarooma In tho thoatro building aro gonorally ongagod for matoup and dreselng roona.)

## Graphic recording of the makeun design

Producing tho destgn
Soveral individual makoup doelgna had boen tried out under etage lighte before the director, toohalcal Alroctor, tochaical adol cor, oootumor, and makoup otaff mot to detormino tho baalc makoup doolga. Froa tho basic doalgn, the makoup etaff doalgnod tho makoup for each individual actor and completed a work aheet for him.

The three atrongeat detoreining factore of maroup wore that all matoup should be atylised and anklike, the rojalty abould have lose atyllzod ancoup than tho ohorue, each eocial atatua ahould be indicatod by maroup difforentlation.34

Mrivin AgAlen ens the thag.o-Maroup would be atylised bj the partioular uae of colopa in the base and oolora, broadnose, and minimization in tho modeling. The chorus would be made moot stylled by cholco of color for the face bace and brow ilnoce-hlgh valuea of yollow

$$
34 \text { above, p. } 247 .
$$

and green roapoctively. (The high valuee would help counterect the eaturnted huee from the footlighte.)

For the race base, the rojal mon would have a red hue, rojal Vomen an orange huo, rojal attendants a green hue, other men an orange or brown hue.

All hues would be relatively uncaturated; men would have deopor color ralues than womon, older mon lese deop then younger. Chorus color velues would be leas than for other cast monbers of the sane sex.

The modellag of the face for the whole cast would be almilari however, 11p and cheet rouge would be ueed by weaen of the rojal house alone, and the green browe of the chorus would diffor froa the brown and black browe of the other caet nembers.

All of the makoup meteriale would be hax Factors face makeup would be greasepaint application.

Makeup dentan for the body.--Body makoup would be llquid; all mon would use red hues, all wonen would use orange hues. The value of the mon's bace would be darker. Ho body modeling colore would be used for anj character.

Mikno dellan for the melr.--The prlary problem conoerning wowon's halr was to make the maturelly ahort halr atjles of many appear longer and nore Grecian without the purchase or rontal of coatly wige or halr pleces.

Chorus women would wear chlentins in enoode the color of their costumes; the attendante would woar floating veile
of the material of thelr peplos; the daughters would wear their halr in a eoft crown of waves; Jocesta would have a chlenon plus a Pleure olght knot on top of her head. It wes detirable for all aon to have hair longer than thelr normel etjlef oonsequently, soon after trje oute all wen wow asked not to heve halrcuts. (Such procedure 1 e advisable in any ahow, for now halrcute appear verj thin and bare from the audionce.) Two aon in the chorue would have thelr natural beards and mustachosi the othere would be cleanshevon. The prlest, shophord, and eessenger would be cleansheven and have grayed hatr. Terealas would have a long whito wig and board of crope halr. Oedipue and Creon would have dark beards of orepe balr.

Recording the design
In opder to make the final graphic recording of the makeup design for ondipun Bex more coapact, a consletont eot of ejnbols and abbroviations 1 s used.

Makeup modeling. --All erees for nodeling are described brierly.
jtakeup color.--Colore are deelgnated not by manufaoturar' numbers or nanes but according to hue and value. (saturation of the mikeup colors is roughly constant; although $b_{\text {R }}$ se colors generally are more uneaturated than moteling colors.) Color hue is designeted by lettersi color
value is dealgnabed by numbere from one to trelve-one is the lightest tint, twelve 1s the dertrest ehede.
coce for color hues:
Fi-rtid Be-blue
O--orange br-obrown
Y-- gellow N-oreutral from white to black
G--green
Thue, ill 10 white; N12 1s black; B6 1s nedium value blue.保点eup application.--Application is footnoted-greasepalnt for the face, greaseless liquid for the body.

Abbreviatlone.--Ch. etande for character. Col.
ctande for color. ESh. stands for eye shadow. Each
Individual makeup 10 lioted after the oharacter(s) for
whon 1t 1e used; each charecter name 1e abbreviated.
Code for oharecter nanes:
Mre-men of the chorue
V-avocen of the chorue
B--boy to lead Tolrealas
PO-opalace offlcial
T--Tolresiac
ge-priest
3-ashepherd
pmonesconger
1A--f1rat attendant
2A--second attondant
Do-daughters of Oodipus and Jocasta
J--Jocabta
C--Creon
0-0edipue
Ob--Oedipue blinded
Elates. --In addition to Plate XVIII, Plates IV, VII.
and IX also plctorially record some of the makeup.

TABLI 16
FIGAL MAKEATP IMESION FOR OEDIPUS REX

| Ch. | Bodya <br> Base <br> Col. | Pacob |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Hasp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | col. | Browe |  | Under ejes |  | $\frac{\operatorname{sen} d}{\infty 1 .}$ | Other Kodelling |  |  |
|  |  |  | Modeling | Col. | Model1ay | col. |  | Modelling | Col. |  |
| un. | 89 | 85 | Sanvy, unnctaral. etralitht 11nesi run | 06 | Heevy <br> lines from <br> nose onto <br> seaple; | 8r9 | Br9 | Hone |  | Two with bearde and mustaches |
| W. | 0855 | 14 | angle from the noes |  | ourve |  |  |  |  | Cbignon in snood |
| B. | Lone | 8r89 | Pono |  | none |  | Sot | None |  |  |
| FO. | 89 | R9 | 40 chorue | Br9 | A* chores | Br9 | Br9 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Rasolablal } \\ & \text { and brow } \\ & \text { lines } \end{aligned}$ | Er9 |  |
| \% | Bione | 05 | As choryo, bat-core curved | N1 | Entlro eje 11d and -00zet | 122 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Masolabial } \\ & \text { lines } \end{aligned}$ | B59 | Long white wIg and beard of erepe halr |
| $\mathcal{F}$ 。 | 89 | Eras | AE chorue | Brg | As chorus | Br9 | Bre, | Mesoladal. brow, and chin linee | Br9 | Hisir whltening |


| 8. | 129 | 07 | W oht, astural 11an | D.7 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { As onorus. } \\ & \text { butilese } \\ & \text { oxtemded } \end{aligned}$ | Br9 | Dr9 | necolablal. brow, and obin 11日0 | Br9 | Holr mitoning |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4. | ล9 | 06 | do chorus. but hookchaped | Br9 | AE chorne, but less extended | 859 | Br9 | Nasolabial. brow, and ohn 11 nee | Br9 | 8E15 whit--ning |
| 1 A. | 04 | 33 | As ohorus | E11 | ne chorus | Er9 | 06 | Rouge 11pe | $\begin{aligned} & 66 \\ & 10 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| č. | 04 | B3 | As chorus | 8 r 9 | As ohorve | 859 | 86 | Fouge 11 re | $\begin{aligned} & 86 \\ & 10 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| IT. | 05 | 05 | As ohorus. but lese slunted | Br9 | As chorus, but lese extended | BrS | 日7 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Route } \\ & \text { l1Te } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 85 \\ & 805 \end{aligned}$ |  |
| J. | 07 | 05 | As chorus, but aore curved and heavicr | \$11 | As azoras | Br9 | 316 | L1pe | 810 | ```Chlgnon, end rifare O1ght on top: #ll``` |
| -6. | B9* | 189 | As chorua. but lese slented | Brg | AB chorus ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | Brg | Br9 |  |  | Beore nenalled in; Br9 : N11 |
| 0. | 89 | 89 | as chorus. but lese elanted | 8 P 9 | As chorus | 8 m 9 | Br9 |  |  | Retrd ponclled in; Br9 \& N11 |
| Ob. | 3ane | 3tum | Suse | " | Eye socket End ild covered | 01 | K1 | Droce und streak. from ejea onto Oheeks | 89 | 9reo |

* Wquid blee vith 20 moceling
igrecenpsint
opoternined by greasorselnt and nowder
ducturally modeled


## PLATE XVIII

## MAKEUP

Baelc male nakoup for the ohorue.


Banio male makeup altered


Shophord


Messenger


Toirealan

Baelo female makeup for the chorus.


Bailo fogale makoup altored.

$\Delta$ ttondant


Child


Jocaeta

## Execution of the makens deadgn

Kethod of oxocution
Eech *ctor purchaoed and applled his own makeup under the sujervision of the makeup ataff.

Makeup rohoarsal
Euring makeup rehoares, Kıy 20, 1958, threo primary alterstione wore made in the aakoup dealgn.

The bearda of both Ooaipus and Creon were too dark and anguler as constructed from crepe halr. (Pletures were taken the night of makoup rohearsal, and several of the platen indicate the 1ncorredt bearde.) Thereafter the beares vere pinolled on with black and brown makeup penolla.

One ettendant's greon face bese had to be changed to blue because of the coloring of hor own egee and halr.

Makoup for Oedipus' bllnd ontrance had to be coore dinated vith lighting. Soth light color modia and matoup modelling had to be modified--the eyelid baee bad to be highlight, with white and the red areas $h^{3} d$ to be more Intense and farthor apart.

Drens rohearnal
No furthor altorations wore ande in the makoup doelgn for the production.

## CHARTE VIIS <br> DEBTONINE AND EXFCDTI

## 

## Fart 1. Genoral Consideratione In tropertios

Two sinde of properties
Page
stage
258
Mand
250
Producinz a property doeign

$$
\text { Informel on requifed for a deslen . . . . . . . . . } 259
$$

> Script requiroments
> Niroctor's roqulromente
> Other tochnical dosi requiresenta etage buolnose requiromente

Oraphic recoralnz of a design . . . . . . . . . . 260
Ixecution of a propertj deeien . . . . . . . . . 261
Metriod of execution
rrop rohearsal
放颙 rehearall

## Fart 2. Iroperty consldoracions Applied to Gedipug firs

infomation required for the property deelg gen
cerlpt mequirmonts ..... 262
Blrector's requirements. ..... 263
Chor technical desien requiromenta ..... 263
stege busines. roquiromente ..... 264
Graphic recording of the property designPage
Producing the deelgn ..... 264
kecordine the dealgn ..... 265
Execution of the property denim
Kethod of execution ..... 265
Property reheareal ..... 268
Dreas reheareal ..... 268

## SODY FO: CHAPTER VIII

## Genersl Conelderations in Properties

## Two kinde of properties-- <br> atage and hand

Stage properties
Stego prozel are those pleces of furniture, draperion, paintings, mace, books, flovers, shrubbery, boxes, cans, and eo on vich normally remain on the eet during a eoone. Thelr purpose is to "drefs," or rase complete, the set.

Hand propertiee
Hend props ${ }^{2}$ are thone infinite number of thinge carried on to the eet by the actore-canes, hats, coate, food, diohes, oultoseas, coabs, lettor, olgarettes, ad inflnltum. It ic their purpose to make possible the atege bualness which 10 oasentlal to the sorlpt and the characters.

8ome productionel organieation includes sound offocte an a part of propertien. Sound effects w1ll be treatod ae - ooparate technical area in thate theole.

## Ecoducing s

Rcoparix dealan
> ${ }^{1}$ Dolsan, p. 268. Bacener, pp. 187, 688. Heffner, p. 109.
> ${ }^{2}$ Aa footnote numbor 1.

Informetion required to produce a property dealgn
forlof cequlcanner.--The prop ohalman muot frot -tudy the ecript ${ }^{3}$ taking apecial note of both atage and hand prope. Prope are generelly one of the moet numeroue oonalderatione in the playi coneoquontly, it 1 e adviceble to $111^{\text {st }}$ and brielly deacribe each prop aa one goea through the ecript.

Dimefocincequicamate--The proports ohalnan ahould thon check hie prop liot with the alrector'e prop 110t. ${ }^{4}$ Any aoalflcatione or additione of the director cen then be used to correct the prop chalrman's llot. froen the director, the prop chalrmarn will also learn the etyle snd mood of the play. If the etyle 18 reallstic or no01fied reallpm, inotorical research any be necoseary to diecover the proper kind of furniture, $d i s h e s$, and $s 0$ an.
other technical doplikn caoulcerante.5--Prope met be integrated wits othor toctalcal areas in productional otyle and inood.
othige propes mut be eapocially coordinetod with the set in atyle, colors, and balanced and sufflol ont armangeant.

Gesener. p. 688.
${ }^{4}$ aciesner, D. 689. hiefrner, pp. 106-107.
5 anesner, pp. 42\%. 689.

Bxecution of a prop deslgn
Wathot of exacution. B-oll would be imposelble to havo avallable all the props that any show wisht require, for noerlj anj articin lenown or conceivable neaj be mequinot Por e given show.

Some prope may come fros the avallable stock of prope: $s 0 m 0$ miny be madflef from the prop stock; some fay bo made from avallable sceno ohop and other materlala; some maj be bought, or rented, or borrowed lhandled with groat care and returned immediately nfter use): some may be concocted from anj combination of any materiale. The groetest ascet for snj prop designer 1o ingenultji a catalogue, dime storo, herdware etore, end/or eecond hand store plue ingenults w11 produce anj needed prop.
cop rohaarael.9--The prop roheareal 18 for the actor to become accustomed to using and handling tho prope and for the prop chalrman to discorer anj necessarj alterations or additions in the prop doelgn.
prop rehoarsal should be one of the earllest technical rohearsals. Especially difflcult pleces of buelnoee chould be rehearsed with the propa (or subetltute onos) long before prop rehearal.

[^25]During prop and oll romaining rohoarale and pere formances, prop orew ie necoseary both to move and ohifi -tago prope and to foed hand prope. Hach prop muot have a opeciflo honder or hondlera and apeclflc place on and back otage.

Emall hand prope ohould be placed on prop lable near their polat of ontrance: lerger hand prope any be placed on, under, or noar the prop table.

Stage prope may be llown, moved obout on the atege, or renoved $n$ on the otage and taken 1 nto the winge. what-- ver their handling, thej must be handled bj dealgnated persone, at a deelgnated time, in deelgnated wej, to a doolgantod place. Properiy handilng and placonent roquiroe alnute and exacting organizotlon, for prope are gonerally numorous and very oesentlel to the otago buolnooe.

Drena rohearanle-During drees roheareal. the ere phaole in propertiee should be upon anooth and accurate handIIng additional modifications ahould not be neoesearj.

Property Conolderatione Applied to gedipun ber

Incormation ceaul med cor fite properis denler

Sorlpt roquiromento
The minimel number of prope required by the gadsmu
Haz ecript is incredible in theatre prop liots. However.
the sorlpt calle for only a garland branch and inconae for Jocente (page P1rty).

Dleoctor's requirenonte
Several other prope were added by the dirootor.

1. Each of the chorue mombore would onter in oupe plication and would carry a branch of oupplication.
2. An incence bowl or other offering would be noeded for the priest to place upon the altar at h1s ontrance.
3. The meseonger would have a velting atlck.
4. Oedipus and Creon would neod leureles Oodipus' leurel would dominate. (Consider this jointly with the cose tumes.)
5. Oodipue would noed a ecepter.

Other technicel dealgn requiromente

The prope had to be eapecislly integrated with the colors of the cot and contuming. Oaly one stage prop, a bowl for the alter, was noeded.
stage bucinese requireaents
All hand prope should be easy to hendle. The leurele should flt with ease and not hamper head geatures or bodily Bovemont.

Producing the dealgn
Tho prop chalraan oonsulted with the other tochnical deslgnere; together they produced the property dealgn which wat later accopted by the director.

The supplication boughe would be rade of throe to four foot brenches with a freyed musiln rag on one ond. (Ancient Greet supplicetion boughe would here hed 100 nool on ole end.) They would be palnted in the loan caturated eot colors.

The mesconger' welking atick would be a branoh approxisately elx feot long painted a et color.

The laurels would be aade of artiflolal leaves ffroa the prop rook ): Dedipua' leurel would be palnted gold.

Oodipus would use a scopter (from the prop roon) made frosil a dowel and plgwood and painted gold.

A lilee branch rould be used for Jooabta's garland branch.
 bowl.

The entrance of the priest and chorus would open the play; movement would be elow and there would be no dialogue; ooneequently, the prieet's offoring could be ceremonious and attention-getting. Therefore it wers decided to have the priost ontor with a 11 ghtod torch and light the altar bowl which would contain cold fire.

Reeordling the dealgn
the prop deelign le recorded on the prop plot.
Color $1^{5}$ rocorded by hue and value. Value ia doalgnated by number froll the lightest tint (one) to the darkeat shade ( $t^{v}-1 \nabla^{e}$ ). Hue is deeignetec by letters $R$ ie red, 0 la orange, $s$ la blue, 3 is greon, and tis neutral from white to black.

Cther plates in the tbesie ploture the propa and are indicated on the prop plot.

## Eracution of the peppactis doslen

Kothod of execution

1. All chorus menbera and the messonger were anked to bring their own branches. ilelng on the rege asd paintlag wae the reaponelbillty of the prop ohalran.
2. $x x_{e} c u t i o n$ of the laurele mat done by the cootuco -taff.
3. The acoptor was gotton froie the prop rooiz and painted gold.
4. A fresh lllac branch wae out each ovonine.
5. in amall gold flover pot ahaped lite a truncated oone wes found and borrowed for the incence bowl.
6. The slter bowl was made from a hub cap puroheced at a second hand store, sttaohed to a pleoe of $1^{\prime \prime} \times 66^{1}$ lumbor.

TABLE 17
FIMAL PROFERTY DESION FOR OKDDIPUS RIX

| Prop | material | Col. | Pleoeeent | Cue | Por | Plate |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 80 mpliction boughe | 3 to 4 foet branches; frajed suelin rag on one ond | BN4 <br> BO:H <br> BRMA <br> ROM4 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Eoene ehop } \\ & \text { table } \end{aligned}$ | Berore show | A11 <br> chorus <br> momberp | $\begin{aligned} & \text { III } \\ & \text { IX } \\ & \text { XV } \end{aligned}$ |
| Maulag etick | 6 foos braseh | D34 | 8R yron table | P. 50 | noeagr. | $\checkmark$ |
| Laurel | Artil101al learee | cold | Dreesing roon | Bofore show | Oedlpue | VII |
|  |  |  | 8L prop toble | P. 65 | creon |  |
| baurel | drtiflcial leaver | 0.10 | Dressing roos | Before show | Greor | VII |
| scepter | Dowel and plywoon | cold | 8R prod table | P. 25 | 0001 pas | VII |
|  |  |  | as prop table | ค. 65 | creon |  |
| asriand branch | wlac branch | 09 | SR prop table | 5. 50 | Jooeste | 21 |
| Incone | Susll flover fot | 0016 | 8 P prop table | P. 50 | Jocanta |  |
| Altas kovl | Bub oad on 1x6: anoll tin cun | cold | On altar | Berore ahou | det | XII |
| Cold ilre | one-ninth qt. |  | In altar bowl | Berore show | Set | XII |


| can of wator | Sin and | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Benlme and } \\ & \text { bolow alter } \end{aligned}$ | Before show | Toroh (Priest) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Torch | Balse mood | St prop table | ¢. 25 | Prioet |
| Lighter plusd |  | SL pror sable | 9. 25 | Torch |
| nttahes |  | gl prop table | F. 25 | Toroh |

Qall projs kre placed and hendled by the prop ohairman.
and palnted gold. A small tin can to hold tho cold fire wae eoldered inolde.
7. Two types of torches were tried-es dowol with muelln wrapped about one ond and a balea wood etlck with one ond soaked in lightor fluid. The lattor proved nore eatlofactory and was used.
8. A can of wator was placed undor tho altar for putting out the torch.
9. allea wood, lighter fluld, matchoo, and cane for the torch were all avallable from the ecene shop.
10. A quart of cold f1re was orderod from a thoatre supply house.

## Prop roheareal

Prior to prop rohoaral, Oodipus had been roheariligg with a aubstitute ocepter. On Monday, May 19, all prope were aded.

Lighting the torch for tho priest's ontrance had to be ejnchronised with the ond of the opening mualc. The cue wee given by the sound teohnlclen to the prop chelrmen.

The mosoongor'e walking atlck broke and had to be roplaood.

## Dreon rohoarsal

No elterations wore made in proporties hovevor, one alteration occurred on oponing nite ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$.

In order to be eure of sufflcient cold flre for the perforesncee, it wee originelly decided to eave two-thirde of the quart for the performances and use one-third for the three preploue rehearsale. The cold fire burned longer than wes antlolpated, and the one-ninth of a quart integrated with the sorlpt and action. So $1 t$ rae decided to uee oneninth of a quart for each performanoe, aleo. Thle inetruction did not got paesed on to the property chalrman and one-thlrd of a quart mee used on opening night. Ho epecial vontllation had beon provided for the altar fire, and the quantlty of funes produced by one-th1rd of a quapt of cold fre mee dietrecting to the ector and audience.

Heodless to eay, thle problen was corrected for the second performance.

## CHAPTES IX

## DESIONING AND EXSCUTING THE SOUND EDEECTS

## Thele of contents for chafter ix

> Part 1. General Conelderation in Eound Effect:
rour kinde of eound effeots Page
Human voico ..... 873
Nechanical or electrical mechines ..... 273
qilectronic reproductione ..... 274
Combinations ..... 274
Procucling a oourd offecta dosign
Information raquired ..... 275
Bealc requirementa
Script requirosente
Dimector' requi rementeCther technical dealgo requirementestage buelness requiremonteIquipment requirozent:
Graph10 recording of a destgn ..... 879
Execution of a soumd offecte desien ..... 279
retind of execution
sound offocts rohearaal
arese rohearesl

## Fart 2. Sound Effecte Conelderations Applled to cedtpur iex

Information required for the sound effecte design Script requirements . . . . . . . . . . . . . 280

D1rootor's requirements . . . . . . . . . . . . 280
Cther tochnilcel design requirements . . . . . . . 281
Stage business requiremente . . . . . . . . . 281
Equipaent requirements . . . . . . . . . . 281
Graph1c recording of the sound effecte design
Eroduclaf the des1en. . . . . . . . . . . . . 282
Recording the dealgn . . . . . . . . . . . 283
Execution of the sound effecte deafign
Method of execution . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 284
sound effects rohearsal . . . . . . . . . . . . 285
Drebs rehoaral . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 285

Oeneral Consideratione in Sound Effecte Any sound effect hee as 1 ts apecirlc purpose to sugeet realitj (It 1 o ofton laposalble to make acoc plotelj realletlc sound offect.) and help suggeat the deelred mood and audience 1mage. hovever, sound effecte frequentls not onls fall short of thelr opeciflc purpose but also actually detract from and are the moet inforior part of production. ${ }^{1}$ Inferiority in sound effects is genorally attributable to leck of ingenulty andor lack of knowledge about electronic sound reproduction. as

John Gaoener eaje:
Conventional methods of producing sound offocts are uavally bad, and the etandarde of too day's theatro extromely low in this reepect. In no other field of tho theatre 1o there ac much noed for igtelligent creativo offort by the tochniclen.

## Kour rind of gound Refacti

Cortainly thore is no boat mothod for producing all sound effects, but thers is a best method for producing a 81von effect-wthet mothod whioh noot clooels approximatoe realitj and suggeots the dealred mood and audionce 1mege. 3 The best method for producing a given offect maj be bj human

[^26]vol00, by mechanioal or electrical machines, bJ electronic roproductions, or bj a comblnation of mothode and moane.

## Human volce

For some sound offocts (blrd and anlmal sounde oopecially), human 1altation works boct. Human 1mitation hae tho advantage that the offoct can be oaslly aynchronizod with the cuof it has the disadrantage that tho offect will probubly diffor Prom tlme to tlme; howover, 0 Iong ae the ©1fference doos not altor the offect' credibllity and 1mproedion, the difforence 1 e not relevant.

Moohanlosl or
-loctrical machinos
For sone sound offecte, the mactinne whloh actually produce the sound or a subetitute mechine are beet. 5 The oound of a masical instmant or a bll 1s ofton beet produoed by the inatrument 1tself. Avalsnohem, breating glese, oroating doore, raln, wind, flro aro froquontly bost produood by traditional ound offocto machlnoe.

Suoh machinea have tho advantage of bolng olmplo derices with esey loudnese control. 6 The dieadvantage of this mothod 1: that manj sounde cannot be proauced by mechanlcal or electrical maohines.

4Gesener, p. 747. Moffant, p. 414.
5acaner, pp. 747-53. ноffinor, pp. 414-10.
$6_{\text {Herfiner }}$. p. 414.

Electronic reproduction
liocorded sound (on diecz and tapeed 1s genorally the best wethod for producing music as woll ae the majority of sound efrecte. 7

Electronio sound systeme in general have the dicadrantage of roquiring complex and expenelve equipeont and a trainod tochaician for operation. 8 Disce have the addod diaadrantage of boing diffloult to cue. 9 Cuoing a tape, however, chould not be disadvantagoous except for eplit socond ejnchrondzation.

The dieadvantages of eleotronic sound reproduction, however, are outwolghed by the advantages-mqualits and control of cound, rariety of avallable and prodicable -ffecte, exact duplication of sound for each reheareal and porformance. Occasionally taping of all tho cound offocts for a how is poesible; in such a case, the alnimus nurber of tochnicians and oquipnont 1 o docidodly advantageous.

## Coabinationo

Nore complex wounde fcrashos, alrplanes, faotory nolse, flre enginee, tralns) are froquently beet produced

[^27]bj a comblnation of severel of the other three methode. 10

## Producing a soung eccecin dended

Information required
Banic reoulcemenib. - The cound designer should have knowledge of traditional sound offocte production (although thie ohould not limit hic ingonulty) and understand the prinolples of electronic sound reproduction the latter is -scentlal if good sound is to be had. A broad underotanding of muclo is additionally helpful.

## Sccipt cequirement., o-The sound offocto dealgner

 ohould otudj the ecrlpt noting thio offocte called for and 110t1ng poesible ways to achiere them.
## Dicector's ceanicementhe-oThe director's intor-

 protation or the play directly controls the kind and amount of sound offecte. 11 The director should accopt or reject each sound effecte production on the basie of 1 te abllity or lack of ability to intograto with his approach to the play. Certainly all muelc, including opening and olosing music (1f used), ohould roflect the mood and otyle of the production. ${ }^{12}$$$
\begin{aligned}
& 10 \text { Oasoner, pp. 747-55. Hermor, pp. 414-18. } \\
& 11_{\text {oasener, pp. } 745-46 .} \\
& 12 \text { ybre. . p. } 599 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Ciber tochatcal dealize ceaulcemente--3ound offecte aust often be oynchronized with lighting and/or curtain. Effocte auch as phone bells and door bells must appear to oome from the direction of the object. 13

3tege buelnges cequirements.--Sound effects frequently accoupany action an the atage or break dialogue at a given instant. In suoh cases, they must be instantaneouely controllable and carefully rohearsed with the action. If background muslc or other background effects are used, they ahould be added early to insure intogration with tho actor's. projection, and wood.

Equlpment cequicementig. --Traditional olectrical and zochanical uachinee can be easil. $\begin{gathered}\text { and } 1 \text { nexponalvely bulltl4 }\end{gathered}$ and are seldow lacking in a theatre's sound sjetem.

The electronic eystem of sound equipaent 1e, how--ver, generally inforior to what it could be (even with frequent budget llaltations) because of ignorance of -lectronlce on the part of the theatre people thomeclvos. 15
hidespresd consciousnees of good sound (through
improved radio tranemiealon, high fldellty recordinge, superior sound reproductione in movies and televielon, and

13volman. pp. 374-75. Geceh́or, p. 596.
14volman, pp. 373-74. Gaaner, pp. 747-53. Hoffner, 414-18.

15Gananor. pp. 744-46. Heffner, 410-11.
so an) mey force the theatre sound techniclans to underatand and utllize the veet new sound developmente.
 effecte recorde cannot result in sound credibllity for any audience. Likewise, use of an inforior instrument in any part of the cound efstem will mete the final sound inferior. A sound ejatem, llye a chain, 1 e only abetrong as ite weakest part, for distortion introduced at any step will not be corrected at another etep.

Selecting a good electronic sound offecte eyater for any theatre requires knowledge of that theatre--1te acoustlce, the typer of productions given, the budget, and other unique features--plue an underetanding of sound -lectronice. (firequently this takes poollng of knowledge by comeone ecqualnted with the theatre and soseone ecqualnted - Ith eound electronicy.) However, some general electronio eystem consideratione for any theatre can be 11 eted. 16

1. Thers should be sufflcient apeakers oo that some may be in the auditorlun for muslc and some may be back stage for directional sound offecte.
2. Although house epezters may be permanontly installed (after the boet directions, baffles, speakers, and number of apeakers for the audiltorluza acoustice have
 Hofmer, pp. 4ll-13.
been found), the beck atage epeakers should have long corde and be moveble to enj desired position.
3. Because good electronlc sound equipment 1s expenelve, eonsitive, and eaclly danaged, techniclane muot be trained to uee and atore it carefully and correctly.
4. sll equipaent should be capable of high fldellty roproduction.
5. Turatables should be multi-apeod and have some ares oapable of plekup from two turntables.
6. All controle--turntables, tape recorders, volume faders, and so on-eshould be located at the back of the auditorlun, for nost sound cuec ape visual or aural and are beat ceon or heard from the auditorl um rear.

Placing controle at the aditorlum rear hae addtioaal advantages. The eenaltive equipeent is not subjeot during the ohow to bumping or bouncing by actors or crew (es cen heppen in a crowded wing area). after the chow, the equipment can (without being etruck) be looked away from inquialtive and untrained hande.
T. Speaters muet be placed in good baffles.
8. For buagotary reasone, the sound ejoton may need to by planned plece bj plece. Eesentiala are one amplifier, two multi-epeed turntables, one mićrophone, and two epearere In good bernes-sell cepeble of high fldelly reproduction. Next additione would probebly be two more apeakers and a
tape reoordor capable of recording sounds from nature ae well ee the humen roice.

A sound sjaton can contlnue to be perfocted and 1mproved to meet the demand of the theatre. Abllity to use any number of epeakers (including the house speakers) separn ately or together 18 often advantageous; metor fadere or perbape stereophonic sound would be aesetsi and so on.

Oraphic recording of a sound offecte design

The record of sound effocts for a shov includes a label and deecription for each sound, how it is produced, the cue for 1 te production, and the pereon(s) executing the -ffect. 17

## Execution of a sound offocts design

Nethod of ereouflon.--Sound effecte if not produced orally may be bought, made, rented, or borrowed.

Kost traditional effecte machines can be easily and inexpensively aede. Renting or borrowing some expenalve or little used instruments maj be advieable.
blectronic equipeent ohould be bought (with careful and knovledgeful consideration). Ronting or borrowing -lectronic lnetruaente may be adviekble whon purchaee 10

17 Gasener, pp. 194-95.

1mposalble et the timef extreme care muot be taken of borrowed or ronted inetmuente.
found eccecti mbeacial.--Sound offocte rohoarsel is for etage action to be integrated with sound, for the sound technicien(s) to eet the control readinge end verify the oues, and for the sound effocte dealen to be checked for eredibillty and integration with the production.

Dran ceheareal -eduring drees reheareal, the onphac1. in sound offocts should be upon amooth and accurato proo duction of the offocte; addtional nodifleatione ohould not be necessary.

## Sound Effects Conolderatione Applied to Gadipur liex

## Incorention required for the geund elregin denfor

## Soript requiremonts

There are no epeciflc requirements for sound in the Gadipun ins serlpt. If any chorel odes or parte of the Odee wore to be aung, elute or Rlute alght be used for eooompeniment. 18 Muele to open esd/or close the show elght be needed.

Director' requiromente
There would be no alnging or need for ode accompaninont. wusic in koeping with the insagic mood of the plaj

18 Above, p. 48.
would be needed to open the ehow. Sound would heve to 1111 the dialogue gape durlng some stage movemente. Music at the and would not be noceseary.

Other technical requiremente
Opening eound would have to be integrated vith tho oponing curtain and lighte. Taping the sound would ineure volume control and preciee timing. All opening cuee could bo takon froa the tilpe reading.

Stage bualnese requiremente
The etage movenente without dialogue would have to be known to deternine the length and number of sound effecte.

Equipeent requiremente
The sound equipment at South Dakota State College Theatre 10 very limited and of inforlor quallty.
mo turntables are avallable for recorded sound effectes one old, laferlor record playor belonge to the 8peech Departmont.

One good, one ralr, and one poor tape recorder belong to the speech Dopertment. The good machlne 1e dealgned to record natural sounds as woll aathe human volce and is generally adequate (but not always avallable) for taped mound n .

The theatre owns no speakere, ampliflers, or microphoneaj fow mechanical and electrical machinesi and a limlted number of music and sound effects records.

There are two epeakers permanently bullt 1 nto the auditoriun with falr direction for audience coverage. A direct line runt frow the auditorlum speakers into the stage left fly galleryi if this line 10 ubed, all amplification and oontrol must come from the instruments which are jacked Into the ilne. There 1 a an amplifier and control unit for the aditorium speakers on stage right into which instruments oan be jacked. The unlt is poorly located in the path of the curtain puller, light control board operator, and stago menager, and acceas to $1 t$ must be gaind through the andio-viaual a1de dopartmont.

## Graphla cecocding of the gound gcrach denled

Producing the dealgn
Symphony Number Twol9 by sibellue wae selected. The record was then tape recorded on algh fldelity ojetem. The tape readinge for the flnal fow musical phrases were 11 stod ae gulde for poselble light change breaking points. Light

[^28]changes wore coordinated with the tape readings, and the cues vere ${ }^{\boldsymbol{e}} \mathrm{t}$.

Stehoaraale wore attended; dlazogue gapa wore lloted. The director and technical director jointly decided that the gaps were so short in duration that tympani beate (produced interalttentij in various pattormi) would be more effective than ahort enatches of muslc. The dialogue gape which needed fllling were ee followes

1. Betwoen the prologue and the parados (page 30), the chorue placed thelr aupplication boughs upon the altar.
2. Betreen the Mrst opleode and the Plret eteelmon (pages 38-39), the chorus had movement without dialogue.
3. Bytween the flrat stasimon and the second epieode (page 39), there wee agein ohoral morement without dialogue.
4. Betweon the final episode and otaaimon (page 68), there wae adalogue gap during the exite of Oedipue and the chlldren.

Recording the dealgn
Abbroviatione.--Lt. otande for lighting; ch. otande for chorus.

8lete. --Plate III shows the genoral action for sound cue number nine.

Crew.--All sound effocte were executed by the alngle cound teohniolan.

Tabli: 18
FIMAL SOUND EFFECTS DESTON FOR OEDIRITE BEX

| Cue | 8ound effect | Cue: tape or page no. | Cues general act1on |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. | Taped aualo | 15 (7:22) | Start tape; givo <br> 1t. cue 1. |
| 2. | Taped suelc | C. 900 | Tarn $1 t$. |
| 3. | Paped muelc | 988 (7:58) | Give 1t. cue 2 |
| 4. | Taped aunic | 1035 | Glve lt. cue 3 |
| 5. | Taped music | 1097 | G1ve 1t. cue 4 |
| 6. | Taped muelc | 1104 | GIve lt. cue 5 and curtaln cue |
| 7. | Taped muelc | 1139 | G1ve lt. cue 6 |
| 8. | Taped music | 1180 (8:05) | G1ve 1t. cue 7i ond of taped music |
| 9. | Tyapani beate | p. 30 | Luring ch. movenent |
| 10. | Tympani beate | pp. 38 \& 39 | During ch. moverent |
| 11. | Tyapani beete | p. 39 | During ch. movenent |
| 12. | Tympani beate | p. 68 | Curlne exita of Codipue and the ch1ldren |

## Execution of the gound effecte deetan

Mpthod of execution
The teped muelc vab played from the stage left fly gallery and jected directly into the audience apeaker line.

The tyapanl vere bornoved from the south nakota state Callege Music hopartment and placed in the stage left ming. sound reheareal

The taped mucic was added hay 19, 1958, and coordinafod with the ohow openingi no change was neceasary in cues or elestronic setup.

## Dresa rohearsal

The tympani were not added untll drese rehearesl.
Maj 21, 1958. The final eerles of tympani beats had to be altered to lant until the exit of the dauchters through the palace doors.

No sound alteratione were needed for the performances.
CRAPTSAK 8
PUARTCTTY AMD FRONT OF NHE HOUSA

TABLE OF COBTEATS FOR CHAPTER X

Sart 1. Bomoral Conoldoratione in Publicity and Front of the Houce
Pago ..... 887Publicity conoldoratione
Front of the house consideratione ..... 288
Part 2. Publlolty and Front of the House Considoratione Applied to Giedipu Rex
Publicity considerations ..... 288
Front of the houce considerations ..... 289

## BODY FOR CHAFTAR X

## Gonerel Conalderations in PublicitJ and Front of the House

Both the publicity otaff and the houce etaff (as woll es the budget) are under the juriediction of the businose mager. Ther are numeroue oonolderatione for the bunlnoce cnager and the varioue peroonnel in the publicity and houce otaffef however, only those comeldoratlone which should be ospecially closely integrated with the tochnical onolderation will bo diecuseed in thle thoole of techalcel direotion. Publlatis aporldemthonn

Tho publicity otaff in beling roaponolble for publi$0181 n g$ and solling the perforance to the publlc ohould attompt to roflect the productional nood and otJle in the publicitJ. It 10 1n thle respect that the toohnical vort and the publicity vork can bo onpociallj intogratod 1 n viaual publicity. (1) The kind and atylo of play can be indicatod by uec of color and other doelga olenonte and prinolpleo in the Floual publlelty. (2) The sane dealen otjle oan be ueed throughout prognane, pootora, tickoto, and all viouel publlcity for tryouts and the production. (3) Use or actual ractore rom tho cot, cootume, prope, and $s 0$ on can indicato what will be coon during the production.

[^29]The technical ataff ia alao reaponalble for seelng (f) ${ }^{2 a} t$ the bualnese manager gets a compleze and accurate llat of the technical peracanel for the progran.

## Econt of the houre aconildecathont

The houac staff in being reaponalble for care of the audlenoe during the ahow is frequently directly conneoted to the teohnioal staff only if the house annager gives the atage aasager the algnal for the ahow to begla. Occaalonally, how--ver, edditional teohaloal conolderatione maj be coordinated wht the houee ataffi for inatance, the ushers mey be ooabuned in accord with a feative rerue ahow.

> Publio1ty and Front of the houae conciderationa Applied to gadipy ginz

## Publlaje aconldacationa

In Ondipu Rex, the productional mood and otjle wore reflected in the publicity.

1. The colore on the poatere and progran covera were ohoaen to indioate the type of play. the baalo background colorea partially saturated blue--1ndioated the tragio nature of the plaj. The fow red accente wore indlcative of the tragedy and bloodahed. The atralght lines and arrangement helped 1ndioate the formal, claadical nature of the play.

2Gesenor. p. 188. Hormoré p. 14.
2. Both the poaters and the program covers for ofodpun her used the same basic deelgn.
3. Had elther of the two major aet pleces for 0adpue Rex been clearly reproduced (even without the cetall) for vieual publicity, it would have been too large to incorporate adequately on normal program and poster elzes. Consequently, one column was used as indicative of the set and the Grecian and classical nature of the play.

The technical crew was submitted to the publicity etaff. One orror occurred on the finel program; the sound technician was owitted from the technical staff by an overaight in proof reading-one of the many kinde of detalled work that the publlcity etaff muet do.

Plate XIX is an example of the flnal program.

## Tront of the houge

The olenal to open oedipun bex came not from the house manager, but from the sound technicians no epecific technical demande were made upon the house staff. During the show, how--ver, the house manager wae avallable for commication from the house to the otage manager.

## FIMAL OEDTPUS EEX PROORAM

## State College Theatre Presents

## SOPHOCLES'

PAET III. INDEXED SUMNNVY TOPICAL OUTLINE AND CONCLUSION

## SERECTING THE SCKIPT

1. Knowledge of playg Page
II. Knowlodgo of an adoquato coazon of pleje ..... 11
A. Verlety in drametic writing ..... 11 ..... 12
2. Klnde of playe
a) Comedy ..... 12 ..... 12
b) Tragedy ..... 18 ..... 18
c) Sorloue drsma ..... 12 ..... 12
3. Stjles of plaje ..... 13
a) Tealine ..... 13
b) Natural1sm ..... 13
c) Hosant1c18a
13
13
d) Classiclem and noomelaselcinm ..... 14

- ) 8 ymbol1 am ..... 14
r) Exprosel onl on ..... 14
B. Varietj 1n sot doalgo ..... 15

1. Sttyle of oconic dosign ..... 15
a) ก.02118. ..... 15
b) Natural1ai ..... 15
c) 81mplifiod reelimm, or ajmbolias ..... 16
d) Improosioniam ..... 16

- Styl1 ..... 16
P) Exproseloni em ..... 16
B) Thootricallom ..... 16
h) Cosstructionias ..... 17
j) Formallem ..... 17

2. Typen of soto ..... 17
a) shlted soto ..... 18
(1) Onit sote ..... 18
(2) Curtain setf ..... 18
(3) Priow sots ..... 18
(4) Rook sots ..... 18
(5) Tracko ..... 19
(6) \#agons ..... 19
(7) D1ecs ..... 19
(8) Rovolving otego ..... 19
(9) Flown oete ..... 19
b) Pormanont ..... 19
(1) One localo ..... 19
(2) Multiple localos ..... 19
(3) Lighting not゙s ..... 19
C. Veriety in cootumo dobign ..... 11
U. Seseonel envertlaing ..... 11
Soasonel echeduling ant equipmont utilisetion ..... 12
III. Knowledge of the audience Page
A. Audience attitudes ..... 19
B. Audlence knowledge ..... 19
IV. Inowledge of the drame facilities ..... 19
A. Actore ..... 20 ..... 20
-. Toohnician
-. Toohnician
C. Tochnical equipment and racilitios ..... 21
ᄃ. Budgot ..... 21 ..... 23
CHAPTEK II
UNDER STANDINO THE SCSIPT
Introduction
3. Hellance on eolf alone ..... 35 ..... 35
4. Fellance on authority alone
5. Fellance on authority alone
III. Hollance on both self and authoritj ..... 35
Body
6. Dovolopment of Grook dramatic wrlting ..... 37
A. Eplc tradition ..... 37
B. Lyric tradition ..... 37
C. Dramatic tradition ..... 40
7. rarly Gevelopionte ..... 40
a) sem1-chorue dialogues ..... 40
b) Hhe: 1 . ..... 40
c) Iepersonating actor ..... 40
d) Increased aubject wattor cholco ..... 41
8. 1y fth contury B. C. dovolopmente ..... 41
a) Tragedian contributore ..... 41
(1) Aeschylus ..... 41
(2) 8 ophoclos ..... 42
(3) Eurlpldeo ..... 4
b) Tragedian contrlbutione ..... 44
(1) Structure ..... 45
(2) Language and pootic deviees ..... 45
(3) Use of chorus ..... 47
(a) In stesime-anchenicel; ropreagntative, explanatory, and aosthotlc ..... 47
(b) In dialogueo ..... 40
D. Foronalc tradition ..... 48
9. Eresentation of Greok drames Page
A. Lramatic presontation structures ..... 49
10. Crohestre ..... 49
11. Theatron ..... 49
12. Stage ..... A9
13. 3kone ..... 50
14. Palnted sconory ..... 51
5 . Malnto
5 . Malnto 6. Additional equipment ..... 52
B. Dramatic prosontation ceremonies ..... 52
15. Coromonial compotition ..... 52
16. Ceremonial support ..... 54
C. Dramatic procontation performere ..... 55
17. Porsonnel ..... 55
18. Costumes ..... 55
19. Maske and wige ..... 55
20. Footwoar ..... 56

## CHAPTEA III

## DETERMINIAG THE-APRROACK

1. The director ab Interpreter ..... 59
1I. The director se coordinator ..... 59
CHAPTEAT IV
DESIONINC ANO EXECUTING THE SET
2. Stylee of eet dealgn ..... 65
A. kiaturallem ..... 66 ..... 66 ..... 66
B. Koall 0 m
B. Koall 0 m
C. Slmpllelod roallem, or aymbollom ..... 66
D. Impressioniam ..... 6666
E. Styllem66
F. Exprosit onl on
66
O. Theatrlcsllam ..... 66fi. Constructionlem66J. Formallem
Page 11. Typeo of sote ..... 65
A. Bhlftod cote ..... 67
3. Unlt sets ..... 67
4. Curtaln cots ..... 67
5. Eloor sote ..... 67
6. Priem sots ..... 67
7. Tracke ..... 67
8. Yegons ..... 67
9. Dlece ..... 67
10. Rovolving stage ..... 67
11. Flown set ..... 67
fi. Pormenont oota ..... 67
12. One locale ente ..... 67
13. Kultiple locale sote ..... 67
14. Light sets ..... 67
15. Elements of design ..... 65
A. Line in design ..... 65
16. Realistic line-odelineates form ..... 65
17. Exproselive line ..... 68
18. Decorative line ..... 69
B. Color in deelgn ..... 70
19. Color definttion ..... 70
a) Hue ..... 70
b) Saturation, or intensity ..... 70
c) Value ..... 70 ..... 70
20. Color harmony ..... 71
a) Complemontary color harmony ..... 71
b) Spllt complowentary harmony ..... 71
c) Triad color harmony ..... 72
d) Anelogoua color harmony ..... 72

- Monochromatic color harmony ..... 72
f) Gonoral color hamnony ..... 72

3. Color expressiveneas ..... 72
a) Genersl expreselvenese ..... 72
(1) Rolative warath ..... 72
(2) holstive lightnese
(2) holstive lightnese ..... 72 ..... 72
b) Speciflc expreselveneos ..... 73
c. Maes in deeign ..... 73
4. Noallotlc mase ..... 73
a) Elomorphic ..... 73
b) Geometric ..... 73 ..... 73
5. axpreseive rese ..... 75 ..... 75
a) Its elmilerity to, ilno ..... 75 ..... 75
b) Its pleconent on stage aress ..... 75
6. Decorative nase ..... 76 ..... 76
7. Negetive mass--apace ..... 76
Rage IV. Principle ${ }^{*}$ of dealgn ..... 77
A. UnltJ ..... 77

- Verlety ..... 78
C. Enphasis, or contrest ..... 78
D. Balanco ..... 78
E. AhJthm, or oontinultJ ..... 78
F. Proportion ..... 79
G. Orece ..... 79
V. Producing a sot doelgn ..... 79
A. Inforimation roquirod ..... 79

1. Eaalo requiromento ..... 79
2. Ssrlpt requiromonto ..... 80
a) Extormal world of the plaj ..... 80
b) Prople in tbo play ..... 80
c) Those and nood of the plaj ..... 81
d) Action requireaente of the plaj ..... 81
3. El roctor' requiroment ..... 81
4. Cthor tochnicel doelcn requiromonte ..... 81
5. Equipmont requiromonte ..... 82
a) atago 180 ..... 83
b) Sight 11noe ..... 83
o) Enifting racilitioc ..... 83
d) Etago avallab111tJ ..... 83
-) Congtructod set ploces avallable ..... 84
f) Tlme and labor arallable ..... 84
B) Toole and matorialo avallable ..... 84
h) Lighting facilitlos avallable ..... 84
j) Budgot avellable ..... 84
E. Graphio recording of a sot doelgn ..... 85
6. Produciag tho aoolgn ..... 85
7. focording the doalgn ..... 85
a) Noor plan ..... 85
b) Sketchos ..... 86
c) Elovation or working drawinge ..... 86
d) $\operatorname{Model}$ ..... 87
C. Executing tho dealgn ..... 88
8. Construotion ..... 88
a) vorting drewings ..... 88
b) Voriting ohedulo ..... 88
9. EnInting ..... 88
a) Fiat peinting ..... 88
b) Scunbilns ..... 88
c) Drezelne, or dry, bruahing ..... 89
d) Sponging ..... 89

- A 0111 ng ..... 89
F) spattoring ..... 89
g) ©t1ppling ..... 89
h) Olazing ..... 89
J) Sprajing ..... 90
k) others ..... 90

3. Hountlng the anow Page
a) Sotting tago ..... 90
b) Sot rohoaraal ..... 90
c) Othor tochnlcal rohoareals ..... 90
d) Droeo rohoaraal ..... 90
-) Porformance: ..... 90 ..... 91
CHAPTER V
DESIGNING AHD EXECUTING THE COSTUMING
I. Two purpoees of costuming ..... 131
A. Goneral purpoees ..... 131
4. Liefintition ..... 131
5. Ach1ovomont ..... 131
a) Coorainated with production stylo ..... 131
b) Coordinated with production noos ..... 131
B. Specl flc purpose ..... 131
6. Fefinition ..... 131
7. Achlevement ..... 132
a) Coordinated with tho actor'e peraon ..... 132
b) Coordinated with the actor's role. ..... 132
II. Three variables of costualing ..... 133
A. Line in coatualing ..... 133
8. Outelde 11ne-etudy hletorical elihouttos. ..... 134
9. Internal lines--fron out and drape ..... 135
10. applied llnes ..... 135
a) Decoration ..... 135
b) Surface pattorn ..... 135
11. 3yabollc llnes ..... 135
a) Vorticle line: ..... 135
b) Horlzontal 11nos ..... 135
c) Ciagonel 11 nee ..... 135
B. Fabric in contuming ..... 136
12. Drape of rabrice ..... 136
a) Light and coft ..... 136
b) Light and otiff ..... 136
c) Heary and soft ..... 136
d) Hoary and stiff ..... 136
13. neave of fabrice ..... 137
a) Cosrse ..... 137
b) Fine ..... 137
14. Texture of fabrice ..... 137
a) $\sin \operatorname{lng}$ ..... 138
b) Vull ..... 138
C. Colorin coatuming ..... 138
15. Cheracterlstice of color ..... 138
16. Sunfsce area of color-obroad, elear ..... 139
17. Sifmbollc olgniflcance of color £age
a) Conoral mood ..... 139 ..... 139
(1) Comic-owermer and highor oolori ..... 140 ..... 140
(2) Tragic--coolor and lower colors ..... 140 ..... 140
140
140
b) Character projection ..... 140
(1) Difforentiation
$1 \not 10$
$1 \not 10$
(2) Description ..... 140
(3) Dominetion
140
140
1II. Producing a costume design ..... 140
18. Information requied for a contume dealgn ..... 140
19. Bealc requirements ..... 141
20. Script requirementa ..... 141
21. Dlrector's requirements ..... 141
22. Other tochnioal dealen requiremonte ..... 141
23. Rlocting requiroments ..... 142
24. Equipwont requirnmente ..... 143
a) Bladgot ..... 143
b) Stoot of costumes ..... 143
c) Equipment for making cobtumos ..... 143
D. Oraphic recording of a costurs design ..... 143
25. Producine the design ..... 143
26. Rocording the dealen ..... 143
a) Nase of each charector ..... 143
b) Costume change for each character ..... 143
c) Costume desoription for each costume--
line, color, and rabric for ..... 143
(1) Basic garment(a) ..... 143
(2) Outer garment(e) ..... 143
(3) Footwear ..... 143
(4) Accessorles ..... 143
G. ixxecution of the costume design ..... 144
27. nothod of exeoution ..... 144
a) Borrowed ..... 144
b) Made ..... 144
c) Hented ..... 145
d) sought ..... 145
R. Costuse roheareal ..... 145
28. Drese roheareal ..... 146
CHAPTEK VI
LEEIONIKO AND EXBCITING THE LIOHTING
I. Three variables of llghting ..... 165
A. quantits on lighting ..... 166
29. Dof1nition ans measure ..... 166
30. Control ..... Page
a) $1 \mathrm{th}_{\mathrm{h}}$ dimmor oyitom ..... 166
b) Nthout dimmer syotom
B. Color in lighting ..... 168 ..... 168 ..... 167 ..... 167
31. Doflnition and measure ..... 169
a) Hue ..... 169 ..... 169
b) Saturation ..... 169 ..... 169
o) Erilliance ..... 169 ..... 169
32. Control ..... 170 ..... 170
a) Color modia ..... 170
b) Color mixing ..... 170 ..... 170
(1) Additive ..... 172 ..... 172
172
(2) Subtractive
173
173
C. Ilatribution in lighting ..... 175
33. Cefinition ..... 175
34. Control
35. Control ..... 175
a) By dimaing ..... 175
b) By inatruments
b) By inatruments ..... 175
(1) iloodlight: ..... 175
(2) spotllghte
176
176
(3) Etriplights ..... 178
(4) Beam projectors ..... 178
(5) Special instrumente ..... 178
II. Two kinde of lllumination ..... 179
36. Gonerel 111 unination ..... 179
37. [eflnition and purpose ..... 179
38. Control ..... 179
a) Os diotribution ..... 179
b. Of color ..... 180
c) of quantits ..... 180
39. Speciflo llluaination ..... 180
40. cofinition and purpose ..... 180
a) Orm roveall ng ..... 180
b) Roallty approxinating ..... 181
o Effoct contributing ..... 181
41. Control ..... 181
a) of form reveall ng ..... 181
(1) Ey color ..... 181
(2) By distribution and quantits ..... 181
b) Of reallty approximation ..... 181
(2) By color ..... 182
(2) ys distribution and quantity ..... 182
c) of offoct ..... 182
(1) By quantity ..... 182
(2) Ey distribution ..... 182
(3) y color ..... 182
III. groducing a light deagn ..... 182
A. Information required for's light design ..... 182
42. Baele requiraments ..... 183
43. Seript requiremente ..... 1.83
44. Director' requiremente Page ..... 1634. Other fochalcal dealgn roguiremente ..... 183
45. Flocting requirements
46. Flocting requirements
47. Equipinent raquirementa ..... 185
B. Graphic recording of a light deslen ..... 185
48. 2roducing the design ..... 185
49. kecording the deelgn ..... 185
e) Instrument number ..... 185
b) Type of Instrument. ..... 186
c) Nusber of lamps ..... 186
d) Nattage of lampe ..... 186

- Color of color modia ..... 186

5) Purpoee of each Indrument ..... 186
B) Hounting of each Instrument ..... 186
h) Aroa covored by each ingtrument ..... 186
j) Connection of each inatrument to the control board ..... 186
k) Dlamer reading of each instrumont
throughout the show ..... 186
C. Execution of a light dealgn ..... 186
1. Installing the equipmont ..... 186
2. Llghting rehoareal ..... 186
3. Drees rehearsal ..... 186

## CHAPTEA VII

## DESIONINO AND EXICUTIMO THK MAREIJP

1. Two purposes of makeup ..... 232
A. Denoral purpose ..... 232
2. Deflnition ..... 232
3. Achlovemont ..... 232
a) Coordinated with the production etyle ..... 232
b) Coordinated with the production mood ..... 232
B. 8pecific purpose ..... 232
4. Colinition ..... 232
5. Achlovemont ..... 233
a) Coordinoted with oho actor as a peraon. ..... 233
b) Coordineted with the actor' role ..... 233
(1) Character's eox ..... 234
(2) Cherecter' heredity ..... 234
(3) Chorector' onvironsent ..... 234
(4) Cheractor' poraonallty ..... 235
(5) Charactor's hoelth ..... 235 Character'age ..... 235
(6)
(6)
6. Three variables of makoup ..... Page ..... 235
A. Kakoup modoling
7. Genorel prinolpion in modoline-highilghts
and lowlight. ..... 235
8. booliy areas in modeling ..... 236
a) Facial aroan ..... 236
(1) Forohead ..... 236
(2) Eyos ..... 236
(3) Mose ..... 236
(d) Cheoze ..... 236
(5) Mouth and chin ..... 236
b) Hands ..... 236
c) HeOt ..... $23 ?$
d) $T 00 t \mathrm{~h}$ ..... 237
-) halr ..... 237
f) Other ..... 237
9. Color and plastice in modeling ..... 237
10. Makeup color ..... 237
11. Characteriatics of color ..... 237
12. Clacslflcation of color ..... 238
13. Cholce of color ..... 238
a) Coordineted with charactor ..... 238
b) Coordinated vith 11 ght ng ..... 239
o) Coordinated with cooturees ..... 239
C. Makeup application ..... 240
14. Oreasopaint application ..... 240
15. Greaselese application ..... 240
16. Conblmation application ..... 241
17. Producing a makoup doalen ..... 241
A. Informetion required for a matoup design ..... 241
18. Baelc requiremente ..... 241
19. 8orlpt requirement. ..... 241
20. Director's requiremente ..... 242
21. Cther teohnical dealgn requiremente ..... 242
22. Equipaent requireaenta ..... 242
B. Oraphic reoording of the makeup design ..... 243 ..... 243
23. Producing the dealgn ..... 243
24. fiecording the doalgn ..... 243
a) Nane of each character ..... 243 ..... 243
b) Kakeup changes for each character
b) Kakeup changes for each character ..... 243 ..... 243 ..... 243 ..... 243
Kakoup doserip
(1) Modeling
Kakoup doserip
(1) Modeling ..... 243 ..... 243
(2) Color
(2) Color ..... 243 ..... 243
(3) application ..... 243 ..... 243
C. Execution of the makoup design ..... 244 ..... 244
25. Nothon of execution ..... 244 ..... 244
a) Nakoup artsst ..... 244 ..... 244
b) Makoup artiot apd atarf ..... 244
c) Makoup artist and actors ..... 244
Page
d) Actors ..... 245
26. Makoup rehoareal ..... 245
27. Drese reheareal ..... 245
CHAPTETV VIII
DESIOHING AND EXBCUTINO THE PROPERTIES
28. Two kinde of propertios ..... 258
A. Stage ..... 258
B. Hand ..... 258
II. Producing a property doalen ..... 259
A. Information roquirod for a propertien deolgn ..... 259
29. Scrlpt requireante ..... 259
30. Clrector's requiromonts ..... 259
31. Other tochnical doelen requirowente ..... 259
32. 8tage buelnoes requi rements ..... 260
B. Graphic recording of a properties dealgn ..... 260
33. Producing the dosign ..... 260
34. Hecording the dealgn ..... 260
a) Labol of each prop ..... 260
b) Desorlption of each prop ..... 260
c) Soenes in which each prop is used ..... 260
d) Forsons (actors and crow) handling each prop ..... 260
e) Cue for saoh propis handling(e) ..... 261
f) Placoment(a) on and/or off atage for each prop ..... 261
C. Execution of the prop design ..... 261 ..... 261
35. hothod of execution ..... 261 ..... 261
a) उँy ..... 261 ..... 261
b) Hont ..... 261
c) Borrow ..... 261 ..... 261 ..... 261 ..... 261
d) Kake
d) Kake
36. Prop rohearasl ..... 261
37. Drese reheareal ..... 262
GHAPTEI IX
DESIOMING AHD EXCHCUTEG THE SOUND EPRTGTS
I. rour kinde of sound effects ..... 272
B. Nechanical or electrical machine ..... 273
Page
274
C. Electronic reproduction
274
38. D15c recorilns ..... 274
D. Comblaition ..... 274
39. Producing a sound offecte design ..... 275
A. Information required for a sound offecte deslen ..... 275
40. Baic requirolsenta ..... 275
41. Scrlpt requirementa ..... 275
42. virector' requirements ..... 275
43. Cther technical dealgn requirements ..... 276
44. stage bualnese requiremente ..... 276
45. Iquipment requirements ..... 276
a) ileotrical and mechanical machines ..... 276
b) Electronic reproduction ejstem ..... 276
c) Budget
c) Budget .....  278 .....  278
日. Graphio recording of a sound effecte deelgo ..... 279
46. Producing the deolgn ..... 279
47. Recording the dealgn .....  279
a) Label of each eound offect ..... 279
b) Leseription of the sound effect ..... 279
c) Hothod of production for the offoct ..... 279
d) Cue for production of the offect .....  279
-) Ferson(e) executing the offect ..... 279
C. Execution of the eound effeote design .....  279
48. Nothod of execution .....  279
a) Borrowed .....  279
b) Hented ..... 279
o) Bought
o) Bought ..... 279 ..... 279
d) Made ..... 279
49. sound offecte roheareal ..... 280
50. Drese roheareal .....  280

## CHAPTEF X

PUBLICITY AND MOHT Of THE HOUSE
II. Publicity oansideratione . Front of the house considorationa...........28?

## CONCLUSION

The baelc purpose of all technlcal work--to onhance In the beet poestble wey the expresel on of the play--1e best accompllshed bj integration of all technical areas and conelderetione in eccordance with the determined productional approach. Although there are generally necesearlly continual adjuetmente andor alterations in the design selectivity in ouch a unifled technical direction, the coordinated and integreted offort thould produce the best poselble epeciplc production of a play.

LITERATUKE CITED

A18E0n, George, Ri N. Thentice ichorfal. Eorkoley and Loe Angeles, Callfornias U. of Callfornia Prese, 1953.
Blober, Margarote. The Higtory of the ficeek and foman Thestren Princeton, Now Joreeys Princeton U. Proas, 1939.

Bonan, Najne. Kodern Thente Hehtinge dow York: Harper - Brothers, 1957.

BurrieoMojer, Harold, and Cole, Hdward C. Scenery cor the shenter, Boatons Littio, Brown and Company, 1946.

Chalmorg, Holona. Glothen on and off the ghage Now Yorks D. 4 ppleron and Company, 1928.

Corson, Klchart. Stage_kakenp, 2d ed. dev York: Appleton-Contury-Crofte, Inc., $\overline{1949 .}$

Dolean, Jobn, Jr. The Act of Plar Production. lot ed. reoleod. kow Yorks Harper \& Brothore Publlehers, 1946.

Merman Ocenk_elarl. Tranc. Laxe Cooper. New York: Oxford Univarolity Prese, 1950.
 Kodorn Llbrary, Inc.. 1929.

Prledorich, willard J., and Fracer, John H. Soenect Eobign cos the ampene stages How Yorks The Macmillan compeny, 1950.

Frown Erich. Han Cor Blanolfo How York: Hinohart and Company, Incorporatod, 1947.
Geooner, John. Yeoduchax the Elar. lot ed. rovised. Now Yorks Tbe Drjden Prees, Publlohere, 1953.
Genek_Denme EA. Bornadotte Yorrin, Now York: D. Appleton and Company, 1904.
 Gallfornia: stanford Univorelty Prese, 1948.

Hofmor, Hubert C., Solden, Samuel, and Sellman, Hunton $D$. Godern Thentre Prectice 3 d ea. revieed. Jiew York: Appleton-Century-Crorts. Inc.. 1946.


Zömler, Carl, Von slchart, Emme, and Dallas, Alerandor $\mathbb{K}$. $\triangle$ Henori of gontum. Now York: O. Howerd watt, 1930.
 Vole. I and II. Wew York: harper \& Brotherd, 1880.
Mns Iactoc's Hynta on the Ack of wne-ung 9 bookleta. Hollyood, Callfornla: max Factor hakeup Etudio, 1952.

Molohlagor, Slegirled. Jmpher der Gegenuack. Frantiurt, Germanys Flecher Bưchore1, 1956.

Moultong ilchard 0 . The Machat cionheni pream, $2 d$ od. Ofords The Clarendon Frese, 1693.

U80011, Allardjce. Mate kheen and klachen. London: Oaorge O. Herrap Company blwited, 1931.

- The Lempoprent of the Theqtice. Londons George 0. Hampap 4 Companj Lialted, 1927.

Borfootion Lightiag Co. Inc. Capitod 5hage inghting popacatua. Cateloy No. 25. H1lleldo, New Joreej: Fublleher Unknown. 1956.

Rolnhold, Weyor. Einentinl of geact and Homan Elanglec. United statest Barronte Eivectorni series, Inc., 1946.

Sears, Prancle wecton, and tomancky, Mark ko UndYerily Phenice Cambldge, voes.: Addison-Wedioy Press, Inc.. 1950.
 OMoIll, Jr. Now Yorts kandom fouse, 1950.
The Theban Plame Tranc. E. F. Matling. Haltimoro, Md.: Ponguln Booke Inc., 1957.
The Trenanion of sophoche ad. Theodore Alo1: Buckley. Londons George Bell a sonn, 1886.
valdock, A. J. A. sophocien the peramatht. Cambridee: The Oniveralts prees, 1951.
Natt, Lauchlan Maclean. Aftic 立 Hentathan Trazedy. Now Yorks \&. \&. Eution \& Co., 1903.

Whitan, Codrle H. Sophoclen. Cambrldgo, Nass. Harvard Univeralty Prees. 1951.
viloox, R. Tumer, The MPN in fortume dow York: Charlea sorlbner' sonc, 1944.

Young, Agnes Brooks. Staze Costuming. Now Kork: Iho Macmillan Company, 1933.


[^0]:    $7_{\text {Frloderlch, }}$ p. 5.

[^1]:    9Dolman, pp. 359-72. Frifidorich, pp. 196-222. Gasener, pp. 92-93. 98-107, 321-26. Hoffnor, pp. 267-81. Following, p. 67.

[^2]:    10Dolman, pp. 73-74, 207-12, Frieder1ch, pp. 61, 68-74. Gasener, pp. 202-?03. Hermer, pp. 20, 23-25.

[^3]:    1A. J. A. Waldock, Bophoclen the Dormitint (Came bridge: The Univerilit Prese, 1991), p. it.

    2IPR.. P. 10

[^4]:     pp. 1x, $x v_{0}$ Oresk Dramak p. 102. An Introduction. pp. 22.

[^5]:    22fliteen Play, pp. xiv, xvili. Four playg, p. xil. AD Introduatione p. 20. Reinhold, p. 90. Seren Playe, pp. xrill-xix. Thebsn plars, p. 8. watt, p. 11.

[^6]:    ${ }^{23}$ Moulton. pp. 9. 81. Relnhold, p. 56. Seren P1aye, pp. x111-x7.
    ${ }^{24}$ 션 Introduction, p. 24.
    25moulton, pp. 86-92. Seren Piave p. xiv. Watt, p. 12.

[^7]:    40Eifien Plara p. x111. An Introduof10n. p. 20. Maharfy, I, 239. Molchinger, p. 16. Moulton, p. 7. Ro1nhold. p. 57.

[^8]:    ${ }^{42}$ pleteen Elayn p. 162. Sgen Phays pp. 119-20. Theban Plaza PD. 13-16.

[^9]:    ${ }^{9}$ Riohard Coreon, Stage_Mitels (2d od.f Now Yorts Appleton-Contury-Crofte, Inc., 1949). pp. 12-15. Dolman. pp. 345-47. Friederlch, pp. 101-104. Geesner, p. 113. Hoffner, p. 298.

[^10]:    25rrieder1 ch, pp. 31-48. Ggemer, pp. 227-35, 303-304, 315. Hoffner, pp. 102-103. 26 Friederich, p. 32.

[^11]:    30 Friederlch, p. 55.

[^12]:    6Dolman, p. 375. Gasaner, pp. 118, 392, 404. Heffner, pp. 419-20, 426-29. 7Gaesnor, p. 399.

[^13]:    ${ }^{8}$ Dolaan, p. 298. Gasenor, pp. 118-19, 399-400. Hoffner, pp. 429, 447.
    ${ }^{9}$ Helene Chalmers, p. 14. Gasener, pp. 395, 399-400, agnee Brooke young, ghia Conhuming (Now york: The kaomillan Company, 1933). pp. 13014.

    10Dolean, pp. 375-76. Gasenor, pp. 118, 391, 395. Heffner, p. 432. Young, p. 13.

[^14]:    11 Gasaner, 400.
    12Friederich, pp. 90-93. Gasener. pp. 400-401. Above, pp. 68-69.

[^15]:    ${ }^{33}$ Hefmer, p. 423.
    34Dolean, p. 376. Geaner, p. 399. Hoffner, pp. 423-25.
    $35_{\text {Hofmer, p. }} 451$.

[^16]:    36 thenan Plare pp. 25-68.
    37 Above, p. 55.
    38
    Above, p. 47.

[^17]:    ${ }^{21}$ Eleotrio lanpe transilit an uncaturated jellow hue. 22 Borman, p. 99. Gasener, PP. 113-14, 364, 785-86. Heffner, pp. 364-66.

[^18]:    $31_{\text {Bomean, pp. }} 4-8,12-15,500_{0}$ Dolman, pp. 90-91, 296-97. 340-41, 345-47, 381. Frieder1ch, pp. 69, 71, 109-11. Gaenor, pp. 107-17, 553. 783. Hefner, pp. 327-30, 332̂-38.

[^19]:    ${ }^{43}$ Bowaan, pp. 143-47. Colman, pp. 268-71, 409-10. Geooner, pp. 115-17, 377, 789-90. Herfner, P. 399. $4^{44}$ gasenor, p. 378. 45ybld. 46 role.

[^20]:     48 Above. p. 45.

[^21]:    ${ }^{1}$ Bowman, P. 155. Gacanor, pp. 118, 120. Hormer, p. 428. ${ }^{2}$ Corsan, pp. 2, 174-82. Dolman, pp. 297-98. ${ }^{3}$ casener, pp. 119, 393-95. Horfner, pp. 419-20, 428.

[^22]:    ${ }^{21}$ Dolman, p. 380. Casener, pó 389.
    ${ }^{22}$ Coraon. pp. 87. 89, 92. Dolsian, pp. 377-78. Geamer. pp. 382-85. Hofrner, p. 中49. Max Eaciot No. 1-9. 23coraon, pp. 92. 95. Dolman, pp. 377-78.

[^23]:    ${ }^{24}$ corson, pp. 92-95.

[^24]:    251,olman, pp. 376-77. Gasonorm, p. 388-89. Hoflner. D. 429.
    ${ }^{26}$ Coroon, pp. 34-59, 186. Folman, pp. 377-80. Qeaner. pp. 380-61: Heffner, pp. 434, 439-40, 453.

[^25]:    ÓDolasn, p. 373. Gasener, pp. 264, 330-41, 641, 688-93. Hiefrier, p. 106.

    9Gaener, Pp. 187, 192, 689̆, 836. Herfner, p. 276.

[^26]:    lGesenor, pp. 744-46. Hoffner, p. 410.
    ${ }^{2}$ Gesener, p. 746 .
    3oesener, pp. 744-45. Hesfner, p. 412.

[^27]:    7Dolman, p. 374. Gesanor, P. 427. Hoftaer, pp. 410, 414.

    8abebner, p. 745.
    spbld.

[^28]:    19 sibellus, Symphonj No. 2 in D. Major, Op. 43 (Columbla Masterworks, The Phlladelph1e Orchestra).

[^29]:    $1_{\text {Hormer, pp. 11, 13-14. }}$

